

Grammatica Burlesca :
OR A
NEW ENGLISH
GRAMMAR

Made Plain and Easie for
TEACHER & SCHOLAR,
and profitable to *Gentlemen*
for the recovery of what they
have lost by discontinuance
from their studies.

COMPOSED.

By EDW. BURLES A. M
and School-master at *East-Acton*
in *MIDDLESEX*.

Printed for the benefit of the *Grammar-*
Schools in the Counties of *Middlesex*
and *HARTFORD*.

Τὸν ὃ διδύσκαλον τὰ ῥ' ἔπος ἀκριβῶς, ὡς οἱ τ' ἔδ
διελθεῖν, ὥς μινδὲν τ' διδακτῆς παραλιπεῖν,
&c. *Isocr. Orat. contra Sophistas.*

London, Printed by T. N for Humphrey Moseley, at the
sign of the *Princes Arms* in *S. Pauls Church-yard*. 1652.

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION



Speſtatiffimæ Libe-
ralitatis fulcro, &
reconditę virtutis Ga-

zaphylacio M^{ro} *Johanni*

Clarkio Armigero, & He-

roico Igniculo Guilielmo filio

fuo, inſignis ſpei pu ro,

&c.

E D. BURLER, *Gratiam pluri-*
mam & Pacem υπερεχουσιν πάντα
vñ à Domino in Domin.



O S erat apud Venetos
(excultiffime ſelectiffi-
meque Domine) ſingulis
annis feſto Aſcentionis
Chriſti, maris dominium ſibi de-
ſpondere, annulo in mare dejecto, ita
ut nequando ſit aquarum irruptio

Hęc conſuetudo (ni fallor) eſt
vividum tuę liberalitatis emblemata,
qui vgilantiffimè incumbis quaſi ag-
geribus & ſoſſis ejuſmodi exunda-

A 2

tiones

Epistola Dedicatoria.

tiones avertere quæ pergunt violentè undis, ire dejectum monumenta Regis.

Nec eo minus, tam gratuito, tam inexhausto benignitatis Oceano me Ludi-magistri officio fungentem prosecutus es ut arctissimo gratitudinis vinculo me tibi ferruminavisses & astringisses.

Ante oculos manet & manebit, quam lautissimè domi tuæ, quam humanissimè Londini, me & amicū meum (qui tuam mensam subdolâ oratoriâ, ovino emunxerat collo) tractaveras. Sed de his satis, nè prolixa verborum series tædium inducat. De alienâ purpurâ & dapibus superbivimus.

Benignitatem laudo tuam. Liberalis es, & teste Philosopho, Viri liberalis est magna libenter dare, Parva libenter accipere. Meum equidem est (mi Domine) præter annum redditum quem (propter habitaculum in quo artes exerceo meas) tibi debeo, meum est (inquam) preces effundere, ut prospere & foeliciter succedant omnia, & tibi, & dulcissi-

ma

Epistola Dedicatoria.

mæ tuæ conjugi, Dominae meæ, unâ cum vestris omnibus. Etiam hoc amplius, meum est labori non parcere, quo ne unguem quidem latum, à grato animo, discederem.

Proculdubio, stupefcit mihi animus, quod ipse, cui erat in animo abdicare Ludi-literarii Magisterium, multo magis mihi laboriosum quam unquam quæstuosum, quod ipse (quis temperet risu) jam ingrato pulvere scholastico sordidus, in re tam ingratâ nihilominus consenescerem. Consenesco equidem, & onus suspicio, quod ut facilius possem subire, annotatiunculas meorum ingeniolis adaquatas typis committere curavi.

Tractet hunc libellum tenerrimus *Gulielmus*. Si non sit dignus quem manibus terendo discat, dignus est quem manibus tenendo divellat. Quid obest (vir peritissime) quo minus hoc minimum, accrescenti meo Domino sit usui maximo.

Non es eo animo (*generosissime*) atq; *Ludovicus undecimus Galliarum Rex*, ipse quidem doctus, qui fili-

Epistola Dedicatoria.

um suum *Carolus* plane rudem esse voluit, ne scilicet (ut dicebat) peritax esset in consiliis, sed quid alii consulerent audiret.

Non es eo animo; audivi enim te aliter judicantem, & regulas Grammaticas cum aliis accurate refricantem. Tu perinde ac si esses alter *Carolus quartus* ille autor bullæ aureæ, qui *Praga* per integrum diem interfuit lectionibus publicis, & cum à *Consiliariis* moneretur ut ad cœnam iret, respondit; Hæc cœna mea est. Tu inquam (nota enim loquor) elegisti doctè differentes in culinâ, potius quàm lautè cœnantes in cœnaculo. Et ibi (ô quàm pulchrum spectaculum!) ibi te patrem vidi *Iosepho* similem, filium super genus educantem: & quid auditum est? sane quod auditu jucundissimum. Audivi te etiam intimos inhibentem, ne quis (filio tuo præsentem) quid mali improvidè effutiret. *Vera pietas decorat possidentem.* Absit superbia inquietorum hominum qui sub specie pietatis dissimulatâ, seculi vitia tacito ambitu prosequuntur. Maeste pietate

Epistola Dedicatoria.

pietate esto (integerrime vir) agnosce *Christum* etiam in præsepi jacentem. Surge in modum *Samsonis*, & excusso teipso dirumpe densos impiorum funes. Dic cum *Davide* sponsi amico, *Recedete à me omnes qui dastis operam iniquitati.* Pugnemus (fortissime *Armiger*) validissimè pugnemus; *Peccato* nihil est inimicus; est *hostium* inimicissimus; huic resistamus *ut dixit David.* (Absit enim talis patientia quæ indulget sceleribus non nisi cum Republicæ interitu tolerandis) Et qui vincentes coronat det tibi *coronam.*

E Schola meâ
Hillingdoniensi
Oktavo Iduum
Junii 1648.

Servus tuus humillimus
tuique observantissimus

ED. BURLES.

A 4

To



T O

My worthy MECŒNASSES,
the Patrons of all good Lear-
ning in the Parish of *Bushy*,
in the County of *Hartford*:
M. Nichol, and M. Hobson,

Grace and peace be multiplied.

SIRS,

I Am as much straitned to express
your worth in a little room, as to
write Homer's *Iliads* in a nut-shel.

The short time I have had with
you, maketh mee insighted into an a-
bundance of worth in you, which shew-
eth you to bee Pauls among those that
are accounted Pillars. It is Melan-
chthonis vaticinium, that there shall bee
wanting to the world three things, lig-
na, bona moneta, boni amici; but that
scholar which hath you two joyned to
himself in friendship, hath mony, and
that which is better; so true is the Pro-
verb, ἀγαπῶντες ὁ πνεῦς ὡς ὁ φίλος.

You

Epistle Dedicatory.

You are the Lillies among the thorns
in *Bushy*. I confesse there are there
excellent spirits besides your selves,
the gales of whose pious examples may
drive one on in a strait course to Hea-
ven; but none do adventure to handle
the thorns but your selves.

Noble Sirs, to this work in these
parts you have given life. And al-
though it was begotten in another, yet
by your friendly Midwifery, it hath
its birth in this place; it is a Bird
hatcht in *Bushy*; and if any sharp
thorns adventure to penetrate the
tender sides, interpose your selves,
and snap them off for Festues to point
out the Rules which may shew them
their errors, who labour to get to
themselves honour by disparaging
others.

Sirs, If your children hereby re-
ceive profit, I am honoured in being

Yours and their
humble servant

EDVV. BURLLES.

A 5

TO



TO

My very truly beloved and
never to be forgotten
friends, Mr *Watson*, Mr *Ailee*,
and Mr *Freswallan*, and
the rest of the Mastership
of *Hillingdon* in the
County of *Midss*.

Peace with piety.

SIRS,

AS I lived long, so I suffered
much with you, especially in
that great Plague, to which
God singled us out, that we might be
a peculiar people to bear some of the
Lashes of his chastising Rod. The
Bell told us that death was daily at
our doors; yet the Lord suffered it
not to enter into our houses; God
then preserved both you and your
little ones. The Plague was violent;
our prayers fervent; the redemption
was miraculously merciful; and what
days

Epistle Dedicatory.

days we set apart in publick thanksgiv-
ing for so healing a mercy, *Judicet
Judex ille summus & tremendus qui
justè judicat & judicabit omnia.*

Sirs, the thing that I drove at a-
mong you, was to drive out an Ale-
house out of the Church & Church-
house; and also to take away those
lime-twigs of disorder which might
easily intangle spongy-feathered youth,
whose waxen nature byasseth both by
the eye and the ear unto that which
is evil.

Sirs, I may adventure to say, that
some prized an Ale-house above that
School-house, for which this *Gram-
mar* was prepared. And take it not
ill, if I play this after-game with
you, and bet somewhat by the by that
I shall hit the block. Joyn together
for the good of your children males
and females, and put out the strength
of your parts and purses, and that
will be effected in my absence, which
when I was present with you, you
could not be won unto. The Lord
reform thee, *Hillingdon*, the Lord re-
form thee, that there may be in thee
spiritua-

Epistle Dedicatory.

spiritual hospitality kept without grudging; that thy Pulpit may be possessed without repining; that thy Parochial Society may be knit together in the band of Christian love, and thy youth flourish in holiness like a green bay-tree; that in all things the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified, and at length the souls that are in thee saved. So prayeth,

Your Masterships

humble servant,

EDW. BURLLES.

TO



TO THE READER.

WHen I behold that Atlas of Grammar-Learning, M. Farnaby, impensely contending with others about usurped Articles in the Latin tongue, and read in the Hebrew institutions of Alanus Restaldus Calignius, printed 1541. speaking of the Hebrew Articles, *Quam habeant significationē Articuli, Latine non potest propriè exprimi; nam Latini carent Articulis; Why should I think any thing in this Grammar to be my own? forasmuch as it might be anothers Observation before mine, unknown to me. I intended this Work for my own school, and gave it the name Pedissequa Farnabiana; at which some pugnaciter oblatrabant, nomine ejus offensi. I know not for what cause; yet this I know, that those Books only with Book-sellers are best,* that

To the READER.

that sell best. I have new named it, notwithstanding *Pars est sua laudis in illo.*

To this Grammar there is little need of a Construing Book; and if any Aristarchus carp at my Translation of Rules, judging me to be an Accius Labeo, who was accounted an unsavory and irregular Poet, for ill Translating of Homer's Iliads, (*verbum verbo reddens foedissimè transtulit*) Let such a one know that I doe not aucupate praise, but have studied plainness; and as I would not be found *foedus*, so I would be found *fidus* interpreter.

What would it profit the Scholar to read Latin words, and yet being asked for the English should be altogether to seek for an answer? as in the Proverb, *Durum telum necessitas*, need makes the old wife trot: What is Latin for the old wife, Boy? indeed it is not with Poets as with Grammarians: *Nec verbum verbo curabis reddere, &c. Hor. de Art. Poët.*

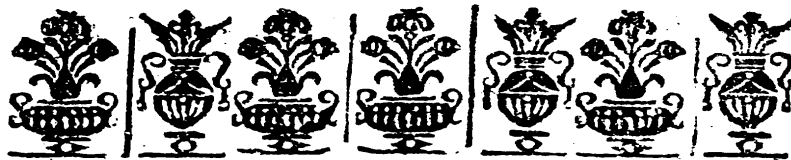
To conclude, Let every Bird challenge his own Feather, and leave mee
ridicu-

To the READER.

ridiculously naked if they can. I shall not regard the frumps and mockage of men, if God in the least measure be glorified by my labours. Yet as Phocion said of his children, if they be like me, that which served me, will likewise serve them; so say I of those whose sails I have used to felicitate my passage to the desired Port, if they be like me, Gods glory will serve them, though their works be serviceable to others and to mee. *Parvus sum, nullus sum, alta nec spiro nec spero, jam vale; perpendat Lector, & repensitatâ judicet.*

*Consuevere jocos vestri quoque ferre triumphi;
Materiam dictis nec pudet esse Ducem.*

'Ex.



Ἐκ διὸς ἀχώμεδα.

PRAYERS

SCHOLASTICAL.

Morning Prayer.

MOST Powerful *LORD GOD*, in whom wee live, move, and have our being. Salvation, and Honour, and Power be ascribed to thee, *O LORD GOD*, for that thou hast mercifully saved, and graciously preserved us thy poor creatures, through the darknesse of this night unto the beginning of this day. *O LORD*, wee will sing aloud of thy mercies this morning; for thou hast been our defence, and our refuge; thou hast drawn the Curtains of thy protection about us; thou hast refreshed us with pleasing sleep, and awakened us with health and strength to meet together in this place

in

Prayers Scholastical.

in peace to praise thee. Now wee beseech thee (*O LORD*) let our souls awake to righteousness, and not to sin; wee indeed are but an handfull of thy creatures, yet are we full of sin: not only by nature, but in our lives; wee have not only loved sin, and lived in it, but have been unwilling to be separated from it. Sin still naturally floweth from us, as impure streams from a corrupt Fountain; and wee finde in our selves oftentimes to this hower, an awked aversenesse and stubbornnesse of nature unto that which is good: untoward wee are to imbrace good instructions, and untoward unto all good actions.

Good *LORD*, wee intreat thee to alter our rebellious natures; and with the light of this day, shew us the light of thy countenance. *O* let the light of thy grace and gracious favour, shine upon our dark souls.

Though for our sins, thou mightest bundle us up unto everlasting damnation; yet this is our comfort, that wee have not so sinned, as to out-strip the infinite mercies of Thee a reconciled *GOD*, in *JESUS CHRIST*; *O* for his sake remit unto us all our sins.

There is sin enough in the least of us, to condemn us unto everlasting misery, and to make the very Earth on which we tread, the Aire wherein wee breathe, and the house wherein we live, to be a perpetual curse unto us.

Save

Prayers Scholastical.

Save us therefore from the greatest to the least from sin, and the punishment that may attend the greatest and least sin.

So discover thy loving kindnesse unto our souls, that we may love thee unfeignedly; and pacifie our accusing consciences at all times, upon the consideration, that thou requirest not satisfaction for our sins at our own hands, but hast already received it at the hands of *Jesus Christ our Saviour*.

And fit us for all heart-searching and heart-breaking times, when wee can see nothing in the world that can support us; let thy invisible hand from Heaven hold us up that we may hold out.

So guide us this day, that in all our actions and imployments, we may have thee in our eyes. Goe on to perfect holinesse where it is begun, both in our thoughts, words and works; begin it in every heart that hath not yet tasted and found how sweet the *LORD* is.

Teach us this day to behave our selves uprightly in all things, as we ought; make us to consider for what cause wee come to this place; and O *LORD*, doe thou take speciall notice of these little ones for their good. They come to this School, but they must be taught by thee; thou only canst give them understanding, and teach them good behaviour.

O *LORD*, so instruct them, that their Parents may have comfort in them, the Church and Commonwealth have good ser-

Prayers Scholastical:

service by them, and thy name have the glory of all.

O Lord, we apprehend thee a merciful God, we apprehend thee the fountain of wisdom, wee apprehend thee a powerful God, able to do whatsoever thou wilt.

From Thee the Fountain of Wisdom, let rivelets of knowledge stream upon us; according to thy power for our good do for us; work for Thine, Thy Church, Thy People, this Nation, the Parish, our friends, and benefactors; according to all their necessities and wants, in all their exigents and conditions, above all that we can ask or think, even for *JESUS CHRIST* his sake, who hath wrought salvation for us; for whom we praise Thee, and in whose name and words wee further pray unto Thee, saying, *Our Father, &c.*

Post-

Prayers Scholastical.

Post-Noons Prayer.

O MOST Glorious, Almighty and most merciful Lord God, we thy unprofitable servants, in fear of thy Majesty, in reverence of thy glorious name, in sense of our woful miseries, and in hope of thy free mercies, do here once again humble our souls in thy sight and presence.

© Lord, wee confesse we are sinners every way; for wee have sinned in the loins of our fore-parents, and by corrupted nature are deprived of thy glorious image; so that as concerning heavenly things, the understanding is filled with blindness, the memory with dullness and forgetfulness, the will with frowardness and perverseness; too much good we have omitted, too much evil we have committed. Satan, and the violence of our own lusts, have oftentimes haled us out of the safe way which leadeth unto life, and set us in a way leading to destruction; this is our misery, (O Lord) we pray thee make us truly sensible of it; for where misery is not felt, there mercy is not regarded.

Thou hast graciously pleased so to provide for the relief of our weakness, and restoration of our strength, as to allow

Prayers Scholastical.

us lawful recreations in their measure, place and seasons; and because in these there is a propension and readinesse in our natures to step out of, and run over the bounds prescribed: we beseech thee as for the pardon of all our sins in general, so for the Lord *Jesus Christ* his sake, pardon all our sins in our recreations in particular.

O Lord, if there hath dropt from any of our mouths, any unseemly or idle word, if there hath been amongst us any quarrels or contentions, if but an angry look, or polluted thought, lay them all aside, let them not be drawn up in a Bill of Indictment against us, but cast all our sins into the bottomlesse sea of thy mercy, and say unto each of our souls, I have put away thy transgressions as a cloud, and thy sins as a mist. O make all our sins so displeasing to us, that no sin may hurt us.

It is Thy great mercy that Thou hast so moderated the frame of our spirits, that wee are not returned with bloody noses, scratched faces, broken legs and limbs, and that we are enabled to come to a second meeting. Now we pray and beseech Thee take from us all dullness of spirit, all wandering and vain cogitations, that wee may set to the work in hand in earnest, every one striving who shall excel others in learning, that we may so get wisdom and get understanding, that we in no wise forget wee are Thy servants depending upon Thee, who art the God of our mercies, able to give us all things conducing to Thy glory, and our own and others good; and

Prayers Scholastical.

and all this for Jesus Christ his sake our Lord and onely Saviour. To whom with Thee, and Thy blessed Spirit, be all Glory and Honour, now and for evermore.

Amen.

Evening Prayer.

MOST holy Lord God, and our most merciful Father in the Lord Jesus Christ, we have great cause to magnifie thy glorious name, for great hath been thy love & tender mercy to us in things spiritual and things temporal; we blesse Thy name for all the good Thou hast done for us this day, and for defending us against any evil. O Lord, as riches and honour come of Thee, and Thou reignest over all, and in Thine hand is power and might, and in Thine hand it is to make great, and give strength unto all, so Thou art the Fountain of Wisdome; Thou teachest men knowledge, which is pleasant unto the soul. We beseech Thee to blesse our labours this day, that it may not be a day lost unto us. O let the Spirit of knowledg and fear of the Lord, rest upon us. Let our Earth bee full of the knowledge of Thee O Lord, as the waters cover the Sea, and delight Thy self in the praises of Thy little ones.

Thine

Prayers Scholastical.

Thine, O Lord, is the power to do for us, and Thine be the honour and glory of all the good Thou hast wrought for us and in us.

Glance Thy favour upon us, even for Jesus Christ his sake, pardoning our sins and miscarriages in our places this day, that when we betake our selves to our places of rest, we may be able to look up to Heaven, and there see Thee a God reconciled to us in Jesus Christ.

In our sleep, work our thoughts & hearts up to a pure love of Thee, and make us so to hate sin, that we may grudge it to have a being in us.

Blesse us to meet again, that wee may praise Thee, and proceed in our labours for learning, till wee have gotten so much as thou in Thy wisdome knowest fit, for the discharge of the severall places unto which Thou in Thy All-ruling, and All disposing Providence hast appointed us. These and all other mercies working for our good, we beg in the name of Jesus Christ our Intercessor, Mediator, and Redeemer. Now to Thee the only wise God, Father, Son, and holy Ghost, who crownest us with mercies and compassions, wee ascribe as due is, all power and praise, dominion and thanksgiving, this evening, and for evermore.

Amen.

Thursday

Thursdays Prayer at Three.

O Lord God, most high, and most holy, who in the strength of Thy power, and sweetnesse of Thy mercy, hast carried us in the arms of Thy love, to enjoy this good hour, and peaceable opportunity to praise Thee, and pray unto Thee: If we say, that we have not sinned against Thee this day, we deceive our selvs, and the truth is not in us. O Lord, make us therefore truly insighted in, and truly sensible of all our sins: make us truly and heartily sorrowful for them, and truly desirous of Thy pardoning mercies in the Lord Jesus Christ. For his sake we beseech Thee to pardon all our sins, sins against Thy mercies, the Messengers of Thy love; sinnes against Thy judgements, the Messengers of Thy wrath; sins of our days past, and the sins of this present day.

And grant that for the remaining part thereof, and for the time that is yet to come of our lives, we may not walk, talk, or sport, as those that live after the flesh; but so live, that it may appear to the world, the Spirit of Christ to be in us.

Lord, work in us will and deed, purpose and power, to bee such as Thou wouldst have us to be; that wee even to the least amongst us, may adorne and beautifie our most

most holy profession of Christianity, by walking in a Christian course, and in all the sound fruits and practice of Godliness, and true Religion.

Lord, master our master-fins, and daily weaken the strength of our corruptions, so conforming all our steps to Thy Word, that no iniquity may have dominion over us.

And that wee faint not in our voiage Heaven-ward, quicken us by Thy Spirit that wee die not; uphold us by Thy hand, that we fall not; direct us by Thy Word, that wee erre not, and at last crown us with glory, that we lose not the hope of our inheritance.

Think thoughts of peace unto Thy people, and always look upon Thy sanctified ones in deep compassion. O Lord, be intreated for, and be good unto Thy poor children in this English Nation; hear the cries of Thine Elect, hear the mourning of them that mourn in *Ston*. Send Thy Gospel to those places where it is not, and blesse it where it is. Continue it unto us with an abundance of peace and freedom, together with greater successe.

And moreover, O Lord, we cannot but acknowledge that Thou hast been very good unto us. Thou hast created us when wee were nothing: Thou hast preserved us being created: thou hast redeemed us when we were worse then nothing, and called us to the knowledge of Thy Son: Thou hast sanctified us by Thy Spirit of life in Christ Jesus, and given us hope of an inheritance uncorruptible, and

Prayers Scholastical:

and undefiled, that fadeth not away.

O Lord, that measure of Learning, which we have attained unto, we register and inroll to have descended from Thee the Father of mercies, and Fountain of wisdom, which we beseech Thee to bless unto us with a daily increase to Thy glory.

Be with us the remaining part of this day, to bless us in every thing, bless us both in the choice and lawful use of our recreations; keep us and the several families to which we belong, in assured safety, when the night comming on depriveth us of the eye of the day; and when we yeild our bodies to our beds, grant that sleeping, or waking, living, or dying, wee may be found Thine. Into Thy hands, O Lord, we commit and commend our selves, our souls and bodies, beseeching Thee to take care and charge of us, to keep us from all evil, to watch over us for our good, and to let Thine Angels incamp about us.

Grant these things, O Heavenly Father, to us here present, and to all Thine absent, even for *Jesus Christ* his sake Thine onely Son, our Lord and only Saviour, who hath taught us to pray; saying,

Our Father, &c.

Saturday

Prayers Scholastical.

Saturday at Eleven.

Let us humble our souls before the dreadfull Majesty of Almighty God our Maker, and in the name of his Sonne our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, through the assistance of the Spirit of grace, call upon him:

O Lord, our strength, our defence, the God of our mercies, the God of our salvation, who art the confidence of all the ends of the Earth, who stillest the noise of the seas, and the tumults of the people, and hast preserved us the living Monuments of Thy mercy through this week, unto this hour.

O God, when we bethink our selves, and search out the filthinesse of our own souls, by the clear light of Thy most holy Word, we must needs confesse our selves unworthy of this or any other mercy, in so much, that if wee are not, we may bee ashamed and afraid to come before Thee, and pray unto Thee.

For, as if the sin of our nature had not been enough to cause Thee to hate us even to a loathing of our persons and services; we have rushed into sins thick and threefold.

(a 2)

and

Prayers Scholastical.

and dowsed our selves over head and ears in hainous impieties. Wee are depraved and poisoned in all the faculties and powers of our souls, and members of our bodies. We are defiled in all our best actions, and were it not for Thy restraining and renewing grace we should still every day more and more break forth into innumerable transgressions; and the greatest rebellions against Thee, that ever were committed by the vilest of the sons of men.

O LORD, wee confesse, because wee have sinned against Thee, that wee are most worthy of Thy fiercest wrath, and of all the curses of Thy Law, and heaviest judgements, which Thou hast inflicted upon the most rebellious sinners that have been, or yet are in the world.

Thou mightest debarre us of all comforts of Heaven and Earth; Thou mightest make all Thy creatures to become our enemies, and drowning us in a deluge of mournful miserie, mightest plague us with all sorts of spiritual and temporal judgements in this life, and then bind us up like so many fire-brands of Hell, and cast us into utter darknesse, into that Lake that burneth with fire and brimstone, where there is weeping and gnashing of teeth for evermore.

But, O Lord, we fly from our selves and the severity of Thy Justice, and draw neer to the Throne of Grace; wee have no ability to avoid or bear Thy heavy wrath; wee humbly therefore, and earnest-

Prayers Scholastical.

earnestly supplicate Thy mercy, and beseech Thee for the bitter sufferings sake, and precious merits of our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ*, freely and fully to remit all our sins. Although our selves have played the wantons, and prodigals, and lavisht out a rich stock of Graces, yet let them not perish for hunger, since in Thy house there is enough for us, and to spare.

There are riches of mercies purchased by our Lord *Jesus*, there is an All-sufficiency to sanctifie and to save. O Lord, as he is able to save all those to the uttermost, who come unto Thee by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them. Save us we beseech Thee amongst the rest, that wee also may partake of the exceeding great and precious promises, of mercy and grace in the new Covenant. Comfort we pray Thee all that mourn in *Sion*, speak peace to the wounded and troubled spirit, and binde up the broken hearted, with remission of sins by the blood of Christ; wee pray Thee to sanctifie Thine by the Spirit of Christ, and make a slaughter of all our finnes that yet dwell in us, and many times tyrannize over us.

Mercifully blesse, and prosper unto us Thy poor servants, the labours of this week, that they become not as the labors of the foolish, who labor in vain, and in things which profit not. Write therefore all the good things in our memories, wherein wee have been instructed.

Prayers Scholastical.

this week, or at any other time heretofore with a pen of iron, that they may not be blotted out by our negligence or forgetfulness; so that evil things should take place of good.

Fit us and prepare us for the day following, which is set apart unto Thy service; prepare our hearts for more publick prayer, and when Thou shalt drop Thy Word amongst us, give us an hearing ear, which may take heed what it heareth, and how it heareth, that Thy Word may work gloriously to save us, which may work to Thy glory, though it condemn us. It is Thy good working power, O Lord, that fitteth us for good things, and it is Thy free mercy that giveth us that which is good; make therefore our hearts holy ground fit to receive and bring forth abundance of holy feed.

Be with us this night coming on, O Lord, bless us, O Lord, keep us, and the places where we live in safety; make Thy face to shine upon us, and be gracious unto us, our friends and benefactors, lift up the light of thy countenance upon us, and give us peace, that we may lie down in peace and sleep, for Thou, Lord, only makest us to dwell in safety.

Hear us, O Lord our God, and answer us in much mercy, and that for the Lord Christ Jesus sake, who hath purchased mercy for us, for whom wee thank Thee, and in whose name and words wee further pray unto Thee; saying, *Our Father, &c.*

Grace

Graces.

Grace before Meat.

Most holy Creator, through whose blessing it is, that thy creatures have strength and vertue, to preserve the life of man. Bless us, we beseech thee in the free pardon and forgiveness of all our sins, put strength into these creatures to nourish us, welcome into us to receive them, and thankfulness to thee for them; in the name of Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

Grace after Meat.

O Father of mercies, from whom every good and perfect gift descendeth, our souls ascend up in thankfulness to thee, for thy blessings which daily descend to us; we give humble and hearty thanks unto thee our God, for feeding us at this time, and for thy unspeakable gifts at all times, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour. Amen.

(24)

The



THE METHOD OF THE FIRST BOOK.

O f a Noun	I
Of a Pronoun	30
Of a Verb	40
Of a Participle	113
Of an Adverb	117
Of a Conjunction	126
Of a Preposition	132
Of an Interjection.	136

The Method of the second B O O K.

T he definition of Grammar, and order of Construction	138
Points	

The HEADS.

Points by which sentences are distinguished	141
The Gender of Nouns from their signification	142
The Gender of Nouns from their Termination	147
The Gender of Nouns from their Declension, of the first and first Fæminines	148
Of the second & fourth Mas.	149
Three special Rules to know the Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension, whereof the first not encreasing, and the second encreasing long, Fæminines.	152, &c.
The third encreasing short, Masculines	157

The Method of the third B O O K.

I rregular Nouns of the first Declension	162
Irregular Nouns of the second Declension	164
Irregular Nouns of the third Declension	170
Irregular Nouns of the fourth Declension	174
Irregular	

The HEADS.

<i>Irregular Nouns of the fifth Declension</i>	ib.
<i>A mixture of Irregular Nouns</i>	175
<i>Substantives Redundant</i>	179
<i>Irregular Adjectives</i>	181
<i>Some Adjectives Irregular in comparison</i>	183

The Method of the fourth B O O K.

<i>A general Rule concerning the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs compounded</i>	185
<i>Concerning the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the first Conjugation</i>	ibid.
<i>The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the second Conjugation</i>	189
<i>The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the third Conjugation</i>	196
<i>The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the fourth Conjugation</i>	218
<i>Verbs Defective</i>	221

The

The HEADS.

The Method of the fifth B O O K.

<i>Concord Plain</i>	226
<i>Concord Figurative</i>	233
<i>Construction of the Nominative</i>	241
<i>Construction of the Genitive with the Pronoun</i>	245
<i>Construction of the Dative case</i>	271
<i>Construction of the Accusative</i>	295
<i>Construction of the Vocative</i>	299
<i>Construction of the Ablative</i>	ib.
<i>Verbs that have a diverse construction</i>	315
<i>Construction of Verbs Passives</i>	320
<i>Construction of Participles</i>	322
<i>Construction of the Infinitive Mood</i>	323
<i>Construction of Gerunds</i>	327
<i>Construction of Supines</i>	332
<i>Construction of Time</i>	334
<i>Construction of Places</i>	336
<i>Construction of Prepositions</i>	340
<i>Construction of Conjunctions</i>	342
<i>Construction of Moods</i>	343
<i>Figures</i>	351

The

The HEADS.

The Method of the first BOOK.

O F Letters	P. 353
Feet and kinds of Verses	355
Poetical Figures	360
General rules of the quantity of syllables	362
Special Rules of first syllables	367
Of middle syllables	369
Of last syllables	371
Of Composition	379
M. Horns Rules	383
A Synopsis of M. Lillies Rules	385

Rudi-



Rudiments of GRAMMAR.

L I B. I.

There are Eight parts of Latine Speech, so called, because every word in the Latine tongue is one of them.

The Eight parts of Latin Speech are :

I. Noun	} declined	V. Adverb	} not de. clined.
II. Pronoun		VI. Conjunction	
III. Verb		VII. Preposition	
IV. Participle		VIII. Interjection	

There belongeth to the four parts of Speech declined,

- { 1 Number.
- { 2 Person.

The singular number speaketh but of one, as fructus fruit.

The plural number speaketh of more than one, as musæ Songs.

There are three Persons.

The first person speaketh of himself :

as	{ Ego I.	} the	{ first person sing.
	{ Nos Wee.		{ first person plur.

as

The

Of Nouns.

The second person is spoken to :
 as { tu Thou. } the { second person sing.
 vos Ye. } the { second person plur.

All Vocative cases are of the second person, by reason of the Pronoun tu understood, with which it agreeth by apposition in the same case.

The third person is spoken of :
 as { ille hee. } the { third singular.
 illi they } the { third plural.

Of a Noun.

A Noun is a word by which a person or thing is signified and known : as autor an author ; liber a book ; bonus good.

There are two sorts of Nouns.

- 1 a noun substantive.
- 2 a noun adjective.

1 A noun substantive is that standeth by it self.

That is, it requirerh not another word to be joyned with him to shew his signification ; as homo a man.

2 A noun substantive hath usually before it in the English a, or the, if a consonant follow ; and an if a vowel follow : as

{ a book.	{ an artist.
{ the master.	{ an angel.
{ the author.	{ an idle man.

A substantive is to be considered four ways :

First, as it is proper to the person or thing that it betokeneth ; as Carolus, Charls ; Anglia, England.

Of Nouns.

Secondly, as it is common to all of the same kind ; as homo a man ; terra a land, or earth.

Thirdly, as it is a substantive signifying things material : as gold, silver, iron, wood, grass, earth, &c.

Lastly, as it is a substantive signifying things not material ; as, time, opportunity, occasion, &c.

A Noun Adjective is that cannot stand by it self in signification, (that is) it requireth to be joyned with a substantive ; as, bonus good ; foelix happy.

Such nouns are adjectives, to which this word man, or thing, may be joyned ; as happy man ; good thing.

Cases.

Nouns are declined with six cases ; singularly and plurally.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| { 1 Nominative. } | { 4 Accusative. } |
| { 2 Genitive. } | { 5 Vocative. } |
| { 3 Dative. } | { 6 Ablative. } |

A Case is the special ending of a word ; be it Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

Genders of Nouns:

There be three Genders :

- 1 Masculine.
- 2 Feminine.
- 3 Neuter.

Declensions of Nouns.

Here exercise your scholar by familiar questions, how to difference a bee from a shee; as, is a dog a bee or a shee? *Ans.* Give the shee of a dog? *Ans.* abitch, &c.

If a substantive be the masculine and feminine gender, Grammarians call it the Common of two: as, parens, a father or mother.

If a substantive be of the masculine or feminine; Grammarians call it the Doubtful; as, cortex, a rinde or bark.

If under one Gender both sexes are signified; Grammarians call it the Epicene; as, passer, a sparrow, the cock and hen: aquila, an Eagle, male and female.

All gender is the difference of a noun, according to the sex.

Declensions of Nouns.

Declension is varying of a word into divers endings, called cases.

There are five declensions of nouns.

A noun is known of what declension it is, by the ending of the genitive case singular.

There are some letters in every noun, which may be called *desected*, or reserved letters; which are to be put to the terminations of that declension, of which the Latin noun is.

The *desected*, or reserved letters of the first declension are found by cutting off (a) from the nominative case singular: as, mus-|a. Lance-|a.

The

The first Declension.

The first Declension.

Musa, a song.

Singulariter	{	Nominativo	mus-	a, a song.
		Genitivo		æ, of a song.
		Dativo		æ, to a song.
		Accusativo		am, the song.
		Vocativo		a, ô song.
		Ablativo		â, frô or by a song.

Pluraliter	{	Nominativo	mus-	æ, songs.
		Genitivo		arum, of songs.
		Dativo		is, to songs.
		Accusativo		as, the songs.
		Vocativo		æ, ô songs.
		Ablativo		is, from or by songs.

Sing. the

nom.	a
gen.	æ
dat.	æ
accu.	am
Voc.	a
abl.	â

Plural. the

nom.	æ
gen.	arum
dat.	is
accu.	as
voc.	æ
abl.	is

3 cases in (a) the { Nominative } singular.
 { Vocative & }
 { Ablative }

4 cases in (æ) the { Genitive } singular.
 { Dative }

{ Nominative & } plural.
 { Vocative }

1 case in (am) the accusative case singular.

1 case in (arum) the genitive case plural.

B 3.

2 cases.

The first Declension:

2 cases in (*is*) the $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{Dative-} \\ \text{and} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$ plural.
 1 case in (*as*) the accusative case plural.

Observations.

The observations let children learn to read perfectly, and they will easily find them upon occasion.

1 That old Authors dissolved the diphthong of the genitive case *æ*, into *ai*: *as*, *aulæi pictæi*, for *aulæ pictæ*.

2 In imitation of the Greeks, the Latines sometimes use *as*, in the genitive case singular: *as*, *Pater familias*; *vias*, *terras*, *auras*: for, *familiæ*, *viæ*, *terræ*, *auræ*.

3 The genitive case plural is sometimes syncopated: and that chiefly in the compounds of *colo* and *gigno*: *as*, *coelicolum* for *coelicolarum*: *Grajugenum* for *Grajugenarum*.

4 *Filia*, a daughter; *nata*, a daughter; *dea*, a goddess; *liberta*, a late bond-servant; *equa*, a mare; *mula*, a mule; for distinction of sex to make the dative and ablative in *abus*, and sometimes also in *is*.

The variation of Greek Nouns.

	no.	gen.	dat.	acc.	voc.	abl.	
masc.	as.	æ	æ	{ am an }	a	â	{ Ane as }
fœm.	a.	æ	æ	an	a	â	-Elec tra
mas.	es.	æ	æ	en	{ e â }	{ e â }	anchis es
fœm.	e.	es	e	ên	e	e	-Penelope

The

The second Declension:

The second Declension.

The desected or reserved letters of nouns of the second declension ending in *us* or in *um*, are found by cutting off *us* or *um*, from the nominative case singular: *as*, *dominus*, *regnum*.

Secondly, of nouns ending in *er*, if a Half vowel come before *er*: *as*, *puer*, or a half vowel: *as*, *tener*; then the letters of the noun it self in the nominative case singular, are the reserved letters: *as*, *nom. puer*, *gen. pueri*, a child: *nom. tener*, *gen. teneri*, tender, young: the like is to be observed in *vir*, a man: and *satur*, full: *gen. viri*: *gen. saturi*.

Thirdly, if a mute come before (*er*) in the nominative case: *as*, *liber*, a book: *can-* cer, a crevice, or *arab*: *magister*, a master: then (*e*) is cast away from *er* in the last syllable, and the remaining letters are to be put to the terminations of the several cases: *as*, in *liber*, the reserved letters are *libr*. in *cancer*, the reserved letters are *cancr*.

From this except,

- 1 *Liber*, for *Bacchus*: *gen. Liberi*.
- 2 *Liber*, free: *Libera*, *liberum*.
- 3 *Asper*, rough: *aspera*, *asperum*.
- 4 *Gibber*, gibbera, gibberum: one that hath a crooked back.
- 5 *Celtiber*: *gen. Celibéri*: one dwelling near the river *Iberus*.
- 6 *Exter*, *extera*, *exterum*: strange, foreign.

B 4

7 Lacer,

The second Declension.

7 Lacer, lacera, lacerum : rent, or mangled in pieces.

8 Presbiter, presbiteri : an elder or ancient.

9 Prosper, prospera, prosperum : happy, prosperous.

10 Socer, gen. Soceri, a wives father, a father in law.

11 **Pouns** compounded of gero and fero : as, armiger, armigera, armigerum. Lucifer, lucifera, luciferum.

The variation of the second Declension.

Dominus, a Lord.

Singulariter	Nominativo	} domin	us, a Lord.
	Genitivo		i, of a Lord.
	Dativo		o, to a Lord.
	Accusativo		um, the Lord.
	Vocativo		e, ô Lord.
	Ablativo		o, from or by a Lord.

Pluraliter	Nominativo	} domin	i, lords.
	Genitivo		orum, of lords.
	Dativo		is, to lords.
	Accusativo		os, the lords.
	Ablativo		i, ô lords.
			is, from or by lords.

Pouns of the Neuter gender in this Declension, also in the third and fourth, have the nominative, the accusative, and vocative alike ; which three cases in the plural end always in a.

Sing.

The second Declension.

Regnum, a kingdom.

Singulariter	Nom.	} regn.	um, a kingdom.
	Gen.		i, of a kingdom.
	Dat.		o, to a kingdom.
	Acc.		um, the kingdom.
	Voc.		um, ô kingdom.
	Abl.		o, from or by a kingdom.

Pluraliter	Nom.	} regn.	a, kingdoms.
	Gen.		orum, of kingdoms.
	Dat.		is, to kingdoms.
	Acc.		a, the kingdoms.
	Voc.		a, ô kingdoms.
	Abl.		is, from or by kingdoms.

Sing. the	nom.	} in	us, r	} Plur. the	nom.	} i
	gen.		i		gen.	
	dat.		o		dat.	
	acc.		um		acc.	
	voc.		e, r		voc.	
	abl.		o		abl.	is

3 cases in i the	gen.	} singular.
	nom.	
	& voc.	
2 cases in o, the	dat.	} plural.
	&	
	abl.	

2 cases in o, the	gen.	} singular.
	nom.	
	& voc.	

1 case in um, the accusative case singular.

1 case in orum, the genitive case plural.

2 cases in is, the	dat.	} plural.
	&	
	abl.	

B. 5

1 case

The second Declension:

1 case in *os*, the accusative case plural.

2 cases diversly, the $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{nom.} \\ \text{voc.} \end{array} \right\} \& \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{singul.} \end{array} \right\}$

Observations.

1 That nominatives in *us*, make their vocative in *e*, except *Deus*, which maketh *ô Deus*, and *filius*, a son, which maketh *voc. ô fili*.

2 Proper names of men ending in *ius*, cast away us from the nominative case, and make the *voc.* in *i*: as, *nom.* Virgilius, *voc.* Virgili.

3 Adjectives in *ius* make their *voc.* case in *e*: as, *nom.* Cynthius, *voc.* Cynthie: *nom.* Delius, *voc.* Delie: *nom.* Philius, *voc.* Philie, and some Greek nouns: as, *nom.* Evius, *voc.* Evie: *nom.* Sperchius, *voc.* Sperchie.

4 *Agnus*, a lamb: *lucus*, a wood: *fluvius*, a river: *chorus*, a company of singers, or dancers; *populus*, a nation: sometimes make the vocative case in *us*.

5 The genitive case plural of this Declension, is sometimes syncopated, or in part cut away: as, *Deum* for *Deorum*: *Virum* for *Virorum*.

And the genitive case singular of nouns ending in the nominative in *ius*, and *ium*: as, *Antonius*: *gen.* *Antoni* for *Antonii*: *rigurium*, a lodge, or cottage: *gen.* *tiguri*.

6 *Deus* in the *nom.* *dat.* *voc.* and *ablative* plural, varieth: as,

Plur.

The second Declension.

Plura- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nom. Dei, or Dii.} \\ \text{dat. Deis, or Diis.} \\ \text{voc. Dei, or Dii.} \\ \text{abl. Deis, or Diis.} \end{array} \right.$

The Variation of Greek Nouns of this Declension.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
in eus.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ei.} \\ \text{eos} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eo} \\ \text{ei} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eû} \\ \text{ea} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eu} \\ \text{ea} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eu} \\ \text{ea} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eo} \\ \text{ea} \end{array} \right.$
mas. & fem. neut.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{os} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{i} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{o} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{on} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{e} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{o} \\ \text{on} \end{array} \right.$
in eos	eo	eo	eon	eos	eo	eo
No. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ulysses,} \\ \text{Achilles,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen.} \\ \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{or} \\ \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ulyssæi} \\ \text{Achillæi} \end{array} \right.$

The third Declension:

The defected letters of nouns of the third Declension, are found by cutting off is from the genitive case singular of the noun: as, from *vestis*, take away *is*, and the defected or reserved letters are *vest. tristis, corporis, trist. corpor.*

The nominative case of the third Declension endeth diversly: as, in *a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x.*

Thee

The third Declension.

The variation.

Vestis, a Garment.

Singulariter	Nominativo	vest	is, a garment.
	Genitivo		is, of a garment.
	Dativo		i, to a garment.
	Accusativo		em, the garment.
	Vocativo		is, ô garment.
	Ablativo		e, from or by a garment.

Pluraliter	Nom.	vest	es, garments.
	Gen.		ium, of garments.
	Dat.		ibus, to garments.
	Acc.		es, the garments.
	Voc.		es, ô garments.
	Abl.		ibus, from or by garments.

Tempus, Time.

Singulariter	Nominativo	tempor	tempus, time.
	Genitivo		is, of time.
	Dativo		i, to time.
	Accusativo		tempus, the time.
	Vocativo		tempus, ô time.
	Ablativo		e, from or by time.

Pluraliter	Nom.	tempor	a, times.
	Gen.		um, of times.
	Dat.		ibus, to times.
	Acc.		a, the times.
	Voc.		a, ô times.
	Abl.		ibus, from or by times.

Rete, a Net.

Singulariter	Nom.	rete	rete, a net.
	Gen.		is, of a net.
	Dat.		i, to a net.
	Acc.		rete, the net.
	Voc.		rete, ô net.
	Abl.		i, from or by a net.

Plus.

The third Declension.

Pluraliter	Nominativo	ret	ia, nets.
	Genitivo		ium, of nets.
	Dativo		ibus, to nets.
	Accusativo		ia, the nets.
	Vocativo		ia, ô nets.
	Ablativo		ibus, from or by nets.

Sing the

nom.	---	Plur. the	nom.	es, neuter in a.
gen.	is	gen.	um.	
dat.	i	dat.	ibus.	
acc.	em	acc.	es, neuter in a.	
voc.	---	voc.	es, neuter in a.	
abl.	e	abl.	ibus.	

2 cases various, { Nom. and Voc. } singular.

1 case in is, the genitive singular.

1 case in i, the dative singular.

1 case in em, the accusative singular.

1 case in e, the ablative singular.

1 case in um, the genitive case plural.

3 cases in es { nom. accu. voc. } plural.

2 cases in ibus, { dative ablative } plural.

Observations.

Accusative sing.

1 Some nouns make their accus. sing. onely in im: as,

Nom.

The third Declension.

Nom. vis, force: accus. vim.
 Nom. ravis, hoarseness: acc. ravim.
 Nom. tussis, a cough: acc. tussim.
 Nom. sitis, thirst: acc. sitim.
 Nom. amulus, a Carpenters rule: acc. amu-
 sim.

Nom. Charybdis, a gulf: acc. Charybdim.
 Nom. Magudaris, the hearb Laserpitium:
 accus. Magudarin.

Nom. cannabis, hemp: acc. cannabim.

Nom. pelvis, a basin: acc. pelvim.

Nom. buris, a plow handle: acc. burim.

Nom. memphitis, a stone fatty, and of divers
 colours; acc. memphitim.

Nom. securis, an axe: acc. securim, so Si-
 napim, Prasapim, Syrtim, Opim, Leucaspim,
 Cucumim, and names of Rivers: as,

Ararim, Ligerim, Tigrim, Abim, &c. All
 such Nouns as make the accusative case
 in im, onely make the ablative in i: as,

Ablative. ablat. vi, ravi, tussi, &c.

2 Other Nouns make their accusative
 case in em, and in im: as, bipennis, a two-
 bill: acc. bipennem, and bipennim: semen-
 tis, seed sown: acc. sementem and sementim:
 strigilis, a horse-comb: accus. strigilem and
 strigilim: cutis, the skin of mans body: acc.
 cutem and cutim.

1 clavis, a key;
 2 febris, a fever;
 3 navis, a ship;
 4 aqualis, an ewer;

make the accusa-
 tive case usually
 in em.

1 puppis, the hinder
 of a ship.
 2 turris, a tower.
 3 restis, a halter.

make the ac-
 cusative case
 usually in
 im.

1 Nouns

The third Declension.

1 Nouns that make the accusative case
 in em and im, make the ablative case sin-
 gular in e, and i.

The abla-
 tive case
 singular.

Ignis, fire.

Anguis, a snake.

Supellex, household-
 stuffe.

Unguis, a nail.

Vectis, a bar of
 wood.

make the ablative
 usually in e, and
 sometimes in i.

2 Nouns ending in trix, derived of verbs,
 make their ablative in e or i.

3 Adjectives declined like tristis, and also
 sodalis, annalis, and such others, as are for-
 med like Adjectives, for the most part
 make their ablative in i.

4 Names of Months ending in is or r,
 make the ablative case in i: as, September,
 abl. Septembri.

5 Nouns ending in al, ar, and e, for the
 most part make their abl. case in i.

Except,

1 Far, meal.

2 Hepar, the liver.

3 Jubar, a sun-beam.

4 Nectar, a pleasant liquor. With,
 Prasapic, soracte, reate, care, hibrac-
 te, prapeste.

The Nominative Plural.

1 Sometimes the nom. case plural end-
 eth in eis: as, partes, for partes: and som-
 times also eis is contracted into is: as,
 Sardeis, Sardis: and the same is to be no-
 ted in the accusative also.

2 Nouns which make the Neuter gen-
 der

The third Declension.

der in i, o, in e, and i, make the nominative case plural in ia: as, *abl. mari, plural. nom. maria.*

Except *ubera, vetera, amplustre: plur. amplustra and amplustria, a flag, or banner.*

The Genitive case Plural.

1 Nouns of this Declension which lack the singular number, make the genitive case plural in ium: as, *penates, penatium, household goods: moenia, moenium, walls of a tower.*

Except *coelites, lemures, opes, primores, procures, &c.* which make the gen. in um.

2 Nouns making the ablative case in one, or in e and i, make the genitive case plural in ium.

3 Nouns which have the nominative case singular, ending with two consonants: as, *ars, pars, &c.* make the genitive plural in ium: as, *partium, artium.*

Except,	
Hyemum, of hyems.	Chalybum, of Chalybs.
Participum, of particeps.	Arabum, of Arabs.
Municipum, of municeps.	Cyclopum, of Cyclops.
Inopum, of inops.	Coelibum, of coelebs.
Forcipum, of forcipis.	Clientum, of cliens.
Mancipum, of mancipis.	Supplicum, of supplex.

Also the compounds of *facio*: as, *artificum, of artifex: opificum, of opifex: carnificum, of carnifex, and Nouns of the Comparative*

The third Declension.

parative Degree: all which, make the gen. case plural in um, except *plus, plurium.*

4 The genitive case plural endeth in ium, of nouns, which make the nominative case singular in is, es, er, not increasing in the genitive case: also *carnium, of caro: vitium, of vitis, a vine.*

Except,	
Canum, of canis.	Panum, of panis.
Vatum, of vatis.	Juvenum, of juvenis.
Volucrum, of volucris.	Opum, of opes.
Apum & apium, of apes.	Degenerum, of degener.
Uberum, of uber.	Congenerum, of congener.
Celerum, of celer.	Divitum, of dives.
Quadrupedum, of quadrupes.	Mugilum, of mugilis, a mullet.
Strigilum, of strigillis.	

5 Words of one syllable in the nominative case singular, make the genitive case plural in ium: as, *mas, marium: nox, noctium, night.*

Except,

Ren, renum: mos, morum: flos, florum: sar, pus, crus, grus, laus, fraus, lex, rex, vox, dux, pes, præs, fus: gen. frugis, frugum: with a few others.

6 Names of feasts, which want the singular number, make the gen. case plural in orum, and in ium: as, *Agonaliorum, & Agonalium.*

7 Alituum is the Genitive case plural

The Fourth Declension.

ral of ales, and coelituum, of coelites.

8 Some genitives plural, are syncopated: as, coelestium, for coelestium.

Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
an	anos	ani	ana	an	ane
as	antos	anti	anta	as	ante
as	ados	adi	ada	as	ade
is	idos	idi	ida	i	ide
	is		in		
is	eos	i	in	i	i
us	antis	unti	unta	u	unte
ys	yos	yi	yn	y	y
o	is	o	o	o	o

The Fourth Declension.

The defected, or reserved Letters of Nouns of the fourth Declension, are found by cutting off us from the nominative case singular: as, from fructus, cut off us, the reserved Letters are fruct.

Fru-

The Fourth Declension.

Fructus, fruit.

Singulariter	nom.	fruct-	us, fruit.
	gen.		us, of fruit.
	dat.		ui, to fruit.
	acc.		um, the fruit.
	voc.		us, o fruit.
	abl.		u, from or by fruit.
Pluraliter	nom.	fruct-	us, fruits.
	gen.		um, of fruits.
	dat.		ibus, to fruits.
	acc.		us, the fruits.
	voc.		us, o fruits.
	abl.		ibus, from or by fruits.

Genu, a knee: invariable in the sing.

Singulariter	Pluraliter
Nom. genu, a knee.	Nom. genua, knees.
Gen. genu, of a knee.	Gen. genuum, of knees.
Dat. genu, to a knee.	Dat. genibus, to knees.
Acc. genu, the knee.	Acc. genua, the knees.
Voc. genu, o knee.	Voc. genua, o knees.
Abl. genu, from or by a knee.	Abl. genibus, from or by knees.

Nouns of the Second and Fourth Declension.

Singulariter	Nom. domus, a house.
	Gen. { domi, at home.
	domus, of the house.
	Dat. domui, to a house.
	Acc. domum, home, or the house.
	Voc. domus, o house.
	Abl. domo, from a house.

Plur:

The Fourth Declension.

Pluraliter	Nom. domus, houses.
	Gen. { domorum, } of houses.
	domuum,
	Dat. domibus, to houses.
	Acc. domos, & domus, the houses.
	Voc. domus, ô houses.
	Abl. domibus, from houses.

Laurus, a bay-tree.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. laurus.	Nom. lauri & laurus.
Gen. lauri & laurus.	Gen. laurorum.
Dat. lauro.	Dat. lauris.
Acc. laurum.	Acc. lauros & laurus.
Voc. laure.	Voc. lauri.
Abl. lauro & lauru.	Abl. lauris.

Quercus, an Oke.

Singul.	Plural.
no. quercus.	nom. quercus.
gen. querci & quercus.	gen. quercorum, & quercuum.
dat. quercui.	dat. quercubus.
acc. quercum.	acc. quercus.
voc. quercus.	voc. quercus.
abl. quercu.	abl. quercubus.

Colus, a distaff.

Sing.	Plur.
nom. colus.	nom. coli.
gen. coli & colus.	gen. colorum.
dat. colo.	dat. colis.
acc. colum.	acc. colos.
voc. cole.	voc. coli.
abl. colo, colu.	abl. colis.

Ficus

The Fourth Declension.

Ficus, a fig, and fig-tree.

Sing.	Plural.
no. ficus.	nom. fici, ficus.
gen. fici, & ficus.	gen. ficorum, ficuum.
dat. fico, & ficui.	dat. ficis, ficubus.
acc. ficum.	acc. ficos, & ficus.
voc. fice, ficus.	voc. fici, & ficus.
abl. fico, ficu.	abl. ficis, ficubus.

Ficus, for a disease, is the masculine gender, and second Declension only.

Singulariter	Pluraliter	Neuters of this declension.
u, through all cases.	ua uum bus ua ua bus	

Sing. the

nom.	us	Plur.	nom.	us
gen.	us	gen.	uum	
dat.	ui	dat.	ibus	
acc.	um	acc.	us	
voc.	us	voc.	us	
abl.	u	abl.	ibus.	

Six cases in us, the

nom.	} singular.
gen.	
voc.	
nom.	} plural.
acc.	
voc.	

1 case in ui, the dative singular.
 1 case in um, the accusative singular.
 1 case in u, the ablative singular.
 1 case in uum, the genitive plural.

2 cases

2 cases in *ibus*, the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dat.} \\ \& \\ \text{abl.} \end{array} \right\}$ Plural.

Observations:

1 That sometimes the genitive case plural is syncopated: as, currum, for curruum, of currus, a cart: and the gen. sing. in *is*, and in *i*: as, fructuis, and fructi.

2 Arcus, a bow: artus, the joints: lacus, a pool: specus, a den: tribus, a band, ward, or stock: partus, birth of children; a child, or infant: portus, a Port or Haven: veru, a spit: genu, a knee, genibus, and gubus: the rest make the dative and ablative plural in *ibus*.

3 Some Nouns make the dative singular in *u*: as, metu for metui.

4 Jesus hath the accusative case Jesum, and in the rest of the cases Jesu.

The Fifth Declension.

The deserted or reserved letters of Nouns of the Fifth Declension, are found by cutting off *es* from the nominative case singular: as, from dies, take away *es*, and the reserved Letters are *di*.

Dies, a day.

Singulariter	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom.} \\ \text{Gen.} \\ \text{Dat.} \\ \text{Acc.} \\ \text{Voc.} \\ \text{Abl.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{di} \end{array} \right\}$	es, a day.
			ei, of a day.
			ei, to a day.
			em, the day.
			es, o day.
			e, from or by a day.

Plural.

Pluraliter $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nom.} \\ \text{gen.} \\ \text{dat.} \\ \text{acc.} \\ \text{voc.} \\ \text{abl.} \end{array} \right\}$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{di} \end{array} \right\}$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es, days.} \\ \text{erum, of days.} \\ \text{ibus, to days.} \\ \text{es, the days.} \\ \text{es, o days.} \\ \text{ibus, from or by days.} \end{array} \right\}$

Sing. the

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nom.} \\ \text{gen.} \\ \text{dat.} \\ \text{acc.} \\ \text{voc.} \\ \text{abl.} \end{array} \right\}$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es} \\ \text{ei} \\ \text{ei} \\ \text{em} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{e} \end{array} \right\}$

Plur. the

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nom.} \\ \text{gen.} \\ \text{dat.} \\ \text{acc.} \\ \text{voc.} \\ \text{abl.} \end{array} \right\}$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es} \\ \text{erum} \\ \text{ibus} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{ibus} \end{array} \right\}$

Five cases in *es*,
the

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{nom.} \\ \text{voc.} \\ \text{nom.} \\ \text{acc.} \\ \text{voc.} \end{array} \right\}$ singular.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plur.} \end{array} \right\}$

2 cases in *ei*, the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen.} \\ \text{dat.} \end{array} \right\}$ singular.

1 case in *em*, the accusative case singular.
1 case in *e*, the ablative case singular.
1 case in *erum*, the genitive case plural.
2 cases in *ibus*, the dative and abl. plural.

Observations.

1 Ancient Writers made the genitive case singular in *ii*, *es*, and *e*.

2 They made the dative case singular. in *e*.
Of

Of Nouns Adjectives.

Adjectives of the first and second Declension, are declined in the Masculine gender like dominus, in the feminine like musa, and in the Neuter gender like regnum.

Bonus, Good.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	nom. bonus	bona	bonum
	gen. boni	bonæ	boni
	dat. bono	bonæ	bono
	acc. bonum	bonam	bonum
	voc. bone	bona	bonum
	abl. bono	bona	bono
Pluraliter	nom. boni	bonæ	bona
	gen. bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
	dat. bonis	bonis	bonis
	acc. bonos	bonas	bona
	voc. boni	bonæ	bona
	abl. bonis	bonis	bonis

Sing.	Terminations.						Plur.
bon-	us	a	um	i	æ	a	
	i	æ	i	orum	arum	orum	
	o	æ	o	is	is	is	
	um	am	um	os	as	a	
	e	a	um	i	æ	a	
	o	a	o	is	is	is	

These eight Adjectives make their genitive singular in ius, and the dative in i, with their Compounds.

1 Solus

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 Solus, alone. | 6 Neuter, neither the one, nor the other, |
| 2 Unus, one. | 7 Alter, another. |
| 3 Totus, all the whole. | 8 Alius, another. |
| 4 Ullus, any. | Alius, alia, aliud. |
| 5 Uter, whether of the two. | |

Ullus, alius, alter, uter, neuter, lack the vocative case.

Sol	us, a, um.	Pluraliter	i, æ, a
	ius		orum, arum, orum
	i		is, is, is
	um, am, um		os, as, a
	e, a, um		i, æ, a
	o, a, o		is, is, is

Duo, two, and ambo, both together, lack the singular number, and are thus declined:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duo	duæ	duo
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum
Dat.	duobus	duabus	duobus
Acc.	duos	duas	duo
Voc.	duo	duæ	duo
Abl.	duobus	duabus	duobus

Adjectives of the third Declension.

Fœlix, happy.

Singulariter	nom. fœlix, mas. fœm. neut.
	gen. fœlicis, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat. fœlici, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc. fœlicem, mas. fœm. fœlix, neut.
	voc. fœlix, mas. fœm. neut.
C	abl. fœlice, masc. fœm. neut.
	or fœlici, masc. fœm. neut.

Plur.

Of Nouns Adjectives:

Pluraliter	nom. foelices, mas. foem. foelicia, neut.
	gen. foelicism, mas. foem. neut.
	dat. foelicibus, mas. foem. neut.
	acc. foelices, mas. foem. foelicia, neut.
	voc. foelices, mas. foem. foelicia, neut.
	abl. foelicibus, mas. foem. neu.

Singulariter	Tristis, sad, or heavy.
	nom. tristis, mas. foem. triste, neut.
	gen. tristis, mas. foem. neut.
	dat. tristi, mas. foem. neut.
	acc. tristem, mas. foem. triste, neut.
	voc. tristis, mas. foem. triste, neut.
Pluraliter	abl. tristi, mas. foem. neut.
	nom. tristis, mas. foem. tristia, neut.
	gen. tristium, mas. foem. neut.
	dat. tristibus, mas. foem. neut.
	acc. tristes, mas. foem. tristia, neu.
	voc. tristes, mas. foem. tristia, neut.
	abl. tristibus, mas. foem. neut.

Nouns of the Comparative degree.

Singulariter	nom. durior, mas. foem. durius, neut.
	gen. durioris, mas. foem. neut.
	dat. duriori, mas. foem. neut.
	acc. duriozem, mas. foem. durius, neut.
	voc. durior, mas. foem. durius, neut.
	abl. { durioze, mas. foem. neut. or duriori, mas. foem. neut.
Pluraliter	nom. duriores, mas. foem. duriora, neut.
	gen. duriorum, mas. foem. neut.
	dat. durioribus, mas. foem. neut.
	acc. duriores, mas. foem. duriora, neut.
	voc. duriores, mas. foem. duriora, neut.
	abl. durioribus, mas. foem. neut.

The

Of Nouns Adjectives.

The Terminations are the same with the Third Declension, and the Defected, or reserved letters of Adjectives are found as of Substantives, of the same Declension.

Adjectives declined Substantively.

Singulariter	nom. bonnm	for	bona res
	gen. boni		bonæ rei
	dat. bono		bonæ rei
	acc. bonum		bonam rem
	voc. bonum		bona res
	abl. bono		bona re
Pluraliter	nom. bona	for	bonæ res
	gen. bonorum		bonarum rerū
	dat. bonis		bonis rebus
	acc. bona		bonas res
	voc. bona		bonæ res
	abl. bonis		bonis rebus
Singulariter	nom. foelix	for	foelix res
	gen. foelicis		foelicis rei
	dat. foelici		foelici rei
	acc. foelix		foelicem rem
	voc. foelix		foelix res
	abl. { foelice foelici		foelice re
Pluraliter	nom. foelicia	for	foelices res
	gen. foelicism		foelicism rerum
	dat. foelicibus		foelicibus rebus
	acc. foelicia		foelices res
	voc. foelicia		foelices res
	abl. foelicibus		foelicibus rebus

C 2

The

Comparison of Adjectives.

The ending of the cases in every Declension.

	no.	ge.	da.	acc.	vo.	ab.	no.	gen.	dat.	acc.	voc.	Abl.
1	a	æ	æ	am	a	â	æ	arum	is	as	æ	is
2		i	o	um		o	i	orum	is	os	i	is
3		is	i	em		e	es	um	ibus	es	es	ibus
4	us	us	ui	um	us	u	us	uum	ibus	us	us	ibus
5	es	ei	ci	em	es	e	es	erum	ibus	es	es	ibus

Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may forme Comparison.

The Positive setteth down the quality absolutely: as, durus, hard.

The Comparative raiseth the signification of his Positive, in respect of some other: as, durior, harder, durius, over hard, averfior, too coy.

In plurculis locis, in very many places.

The English of the Comparative degree hath commonly this word more before it, or this partel er, in the end of it: as, mollior, softer, or more soft.

When it hath this word somewhat, before it, or ish in the end of it, it signifieth lesse then the Positive: as, pallidior, palish, or somewhat pale.

The Superlative exceedeth the Positive in the highest degree: as, durissimus, hardest.

The

Comparison of Adjectives.

The Superlative hath before it in the English, the sign most, or very, or est in the end of it: as,

mollissimus, { softest.
very soft.

Summa autoritas, very high authority.

Be he never so great a friend of mine,

Sit intimus à corde, or consiliis.

The Comparative, and Superlative Degrees are formed from the first case of the Positive that endeth in i, by putting thereto or and us, to make the Comparative: as, of duri, durior, masculine and feminine, and durius, neuter: and by putting thereto s and simus, to make the Superlative: as, of duri, durissimus.

Positives in r, make their Superlative by putting to rimus: as, pulcher, fair: pulchrior, fairer: pulcherrimus, fairest.

These Adjectives in lis, make their Superlative by changing is, into limus: as, facilis, easie. faciliior, more easie: facillimus, most easie.

Humilis, humble: humilior, more humble: humillimus, most humble.

Similis, like: similior, more like: similimus, most like.

Imbecillis, weak: imbecillior, more weak: imbecillimus, or imbecillissimus, most weak.

If a vowel come before us, the degrees are made by magis, more, and maximè, most: as, pius, godly, magis pius, more godly, maximè pius, most godly.

A Pronoun.

A Pronoun is a word which supplieth and setteth the place of a Noun.

First, a Pronoun pointeth out some new person not mentioned afore: as, Ego, I: Tu, Thou.

Secondly, it respecteth, and rehearseth some person, or thing afore mentioned: as, ille, hee, ipse, hee, iste, hee, is, hee, hic, he, sui, of himself, or themselves, qui, who, and these are called *Relatives*.

Thirdly, it denoteth propriety: as, meus, mine, tuus, thine, suus, his, noster, ours, vester, yours: cujus, cuja, cujum, whose, which they call *Possessives*.

Fourthly, it signifieth Nation, Sex, or Party: as, nostras, of our own Countrey, or household: vestras, of your Countrey, lineage, or sex: cujas, of what sex, or Countrey, which they term *Gentiles*, and are declined like *foelix*.

There are three Pronoun Substantives, Ego, Tu, Sui: to which add quid, with his Compounds, and all the rest are *Adjectives*.

The

The Substantives have a peculiar declining.

Singul.	Plur.
Nom. Ego, I	Nom. Nos, We
Gen. Mei, of me	Gen. Nostrium, of us: Nostri, of us
Dat. Mihi, to me	Dat. Nobis, to us
Acc. Me, me	Acc. Nos, us.
Voc. ———	Voc. ———
Abl. à, me, from or by me	Abl. à, nobis, from or by us.

Singulariter	Nom. { Ego ipse, or egomet ipse } I, my self
	Gen. Mei ipsius, of me my self
	Dat. Mihi ipsi, to me my self
	Acc. Me ipsum, me my self
	Voc. ———
Pluraliter	Abl. à me ipso, from or by me my self
	Nom. nos ipsi, we our selves
	Gen. nostrum ipsorum, of us our selves.
	Dat. nobis ipsis, to or for us our selves
	Acc. nos ipsos, us our selves.
	Voc. ———
	Abl. à nobis ipsis, from or by us our selves.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Tu, thou	Nom. vos, ye, you.
Gen. Tui, of thee	Gen. vestrum, of you, or vestri, of you.
Dat. Tibi, to thee	Dat. vobis, to you.
Acc. Te, thee	Acc. vos, ye, you.
Voc. Tu, O thou	Voc. ô vos, ô yee.
Abl. à te, from or by thee	Abl. à vobis, from or by you.
	C 4 Sing.

Of a Pronoun.

Singulariter {
nom. tute ipse, *thou thy self.*
gen. tui ipsius, *of thee thy self.*
dat. tibi ipsi, *to thee thy self.*
acc. te ipsum, *thee thy self.*
voc. _____
abl. à te ipso, *from or by thee thy self.*

Pluraliter {
nom. vos ipsi, *ye your selves.*
gen. vestrum ipsorum, *of you your selves.*
dat. vobis ipsis, *to you your selves.*
acc. vos ipsos, *ye your selves.*
voc. _____
abl. à vobis ipsis, *from or by you your selves.*

Nots.

Nostri and vestri, the genitive cases plural of ego, and tu, are not joined with an adjective plural, but the genitives nostrum and vestrum: as, contemptor nostrum duorum, a despiser of us two; not contemptor nostri duorum.

Singulariter and Pluraliter.

Gen. sui, *of himself, or of themselves, of her self, of itself.*

Dat. sibi, *to himself, or themselves, to her self, to it self.*

Acc. se, *himself, or themselves, her self, it self.*

Abl. à se, *from himself, or themselves, from her self, from it self.*

Singulariter

Nom. suus, *his own, sua, her own, suum, its own.*

Gen. sui, *of his own, suæ, of her own, sui, of its own.*

Dat. suo, *to his own, suæ, to her own, suo, to its own.*

Acc.

Of a Pronoun.

Acc. suum, *his own, suam, her own, suum, its own.*

Voc. _____

Abl. à suo, *from his own, suâ from her own, suo, from its own.*

Pluraliter

Nom. sui, *his own, suæ, her own, sua, its own.*

Gen. suorum, *of his own, suarum, of her own, suorum, of its own.*

Dat. suis, *to his own, to her own, to its own.*

Acc. suos, *his own, suas, her own, sua, its own.*

Voc. _____

Abl. à suis, *from or by his own, her own, its own.*

Singulariter

No. ille,	{ he, that man, that same,	{ illa	{ she, that wo- man	{ illud,	{ that or that thing.

Gen. illius, *of him, of her, of that thing.*

Dat. illi, *to him, to her, to that thing.*

Acc. illum, *him, illam, her, illud, that thing.*

Voc. _____

Abl. illo, *from him, illâ, from her, illo, from that thing.*

Pluraliter

Nom. illi, *they, or those, illæ, those, illa, those things.*

Gen. illorum, *of those, illarum, of those, illorum, of those things.*

Dat. illis, *to those, them or those things.*

Acc. illos { *them* } illas { *them* } illa, those
 { *those* } { *those* } things.

Voc. —
 Abl. ab illis, { *them*.
 from or by } { *those*.

<i>Sing. mas. fœm. neu.</i>	<i>Plur. mas. fœm. neut.</i>
Nom. ille, illa, illud	Nom. illi, illæ, illa
Gen. illius, illius, il- lius	Gen. illorum, illa- rum, illorum
Dat. illi, illi, illi	Dat. illis, illis, illis
Acc. illum, illam, il- lum	Acc. illos, illas, illa
Voc. —	Voc. —
Abl. illo, illâ, illo	Abl. illis, illis, illis

Singulariter
 Nom. iste, *this*, ista, *this*, istud, *that thing*.
 Gen. istius, *of this*.
 Dat. isti, *to this*.
 Acc. istum, *this*, istam, *this*, istud, *that thing*.
 Voc. —
 Abl. ab isto, *from this*, istâ, *from this*, isto
 from this thing.

Pluraliter
 Nom. isti, *these*, istæ, *these*, ista, *these things*.
 Gen. istorum, *of these*, istarum, *of these*,
 istorum, *of these things*.
 Dat. istis, *to these*.
 Acc. istos, *these*, istas, *these*, ista, *these things*.
 Voc. —
 Abl. ab istis, *from or by these*.

Sing:

<i>Sing. mas. fœm. neut.</i>	<i>Plur. mas. fœm. neut.</i>
Nom. iste, ista, istud	Nom. isti, istæ, ista
Gen. istius, istius, isti- us	Gen. istorum, ista- rum, istorum
Dat. isti, isti, isti	Dat. istis, istis, istis
Acc. istum, istam, istū	Acc. istos, istas, ista
Voc. —	Voc. —
Abl. isto, istâ, isto	Abl. istis, istis, istis

Singulariter

Nom. ipse, { *hee himself*
 or,
 hee his own self
 ipsa, { *shee her self*
 shee her own self
 it self

ipsum, *that same, or it self*
 Gen. ipsius, *of his, of himself, of her self, of*
 it self, of that same.
 Dat. ipsi, *to himself, to her self, to it self, to*
 that same.
 Acc. ipsum, *himself, ipsam, her self, ipsum, it*
 self, that same.
 Voc. —

Abl. ipso, *from himself, ipsâ, from her self,*
 from its self, ipso, from its self.

Pluraliter

Nom. ipsi, *they themselves, or their own selves,*
 ipsæ, *themselves, ipsa, themselves*.
 Gen. ipsorum, *of themselves, ipsarum, of*
 themselves, ipsorum, of themselves.
 Dat. ipsis, *to themselves*.
 Acc. ipsos, *themselves, ipsas, themselves, ipsa,*
 themselves.
 Voc. —

Abl. ab ipsis, *from or by themselves*.

Istum ipsū
librum dico.
I mean the
very same
book.

Ipsum an-
nulum, that
same thing.
In ipsâ e-
nim dubita-
tione, for in
the very
doubting.

Re ipsâ mi-
hi dolet, in
very deed
it grieves
me.

His ipsis
quibus, evē
for them,
for whom.
Eo ipso die,
the self

Sing. same day.

Of a Pronoun

Sing. mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fœm. neut.
Nom. ipsæ, ipsa, ipsum	Nom. ipsi, ipsæ, ipsa
Gen. ipsius, ipsius, ipsius.	Gen. ipsorum, ipsarum, ipsorum
Dat. ipsi, ipsi, ipsi	Dat. ipsis, ipsis, ipsis
Acc. ipsum, ipsam, ipsum	Acc. ipsos, ipsas, ipsa
Voc. —	Voc. —
Abl. ipso, ipsâ, ipso	Abl. ipsis, ipsis, ipsis

Singulariter

Nom. hic, this : hæc, this : hoc, this
Gen. hujus, of this, &c.

Pluraliter

In his, in these, or among the. Nom. hi, these : hæc, these : hæc, these
Gen. horum, of these, &c.

Sing. mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fœm. neut.
Nom. hic, hæc, hoc	Nom. hi, hæc, hæc
Gen. hujus, hujus, hujus	Gen. horum, harum, horum
Dat. huic, huic, huic	Dat. his, his, his
Acc. hunc, hanc, hoc	Acc. hos, has, hæc
Voc. —	Voc. —
Abl. hoc, hac, hoc	Abl. his, his, his

Singulariter

Nom. is, he, or that same : ea, she : id, that thing.

Gen. ejus, of him, of her, of that thing.

Dat. ei, to him, to her, to that thing.

Acc. eum, him : eam, her : id, that thing.

Voc. —

Abl. ab eo, from or by him : eâ, from or by her, or it : eo, from or by that thing.

Plur.

Idem hoc ipsum, the very same thing.
Eo ipso die, the self same day.

Of a Pronoun:

Pluraliter

Nom. ii, they or those : eæ, those : ea, those things.

Gen. eorum, of them or those : earum, of them or those : eorum, of those.

Dat. eis, or iis, to those.

Acc. eos {those} eas {those} ea, those things.
 {them} {them}

Voc. —

Abl. ab iis, {those} {de iis, of those.
by them or {these} {ex iis, of these.

Eos nullos videret, he saw none of them.

Sing. Mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fœm. neut.
Nom. is, ea, id	Nom. ii, eæ, ea
Gen. ejus, ejus, ejus	Gen. eorum, earum, eorum
Dat. ei, ei, ei	Dat. {iis, iis, iis eis, eis, eis,
Acc. eum, eam, id	Acc. eos, eas, ea
Voc. —	Voc. —
Abl. eo, eâ, eo	Abl. {iis, {iis, {iis eis, {eis, {eis

Singulariter

Nom. {quis, who.} quæ, who or which.
 {qui, who.} quod, which thing: or quid
 {or which.} what.

Gen. cujus, of which, or whose.

Dat. cui, to which, or to whom.

Acc. quē, {whom.} quam, {whom} quod, {which
 {which.} {which} thing.

Voc. —

Abl. quo, from {which.} quâ, from {which.
 {whom.} {whom:
quo, from which thing.

Plura-

Pluraliter			
No. qui	{ who which }	quæ	{ who which } quæ which things.
Gen. quorum	{ of which of whom whereof of what }	quorum	{ of which of whom whereof of what } quorum of which things.
Dat.	{ quibus queis }	to which, to what.	
acc. illos,	{ them, those, }	illas	{ them, those, } illa, those things.
Voc.			
Abl.	{ quibus queis }	from whom, what, which.	

Sing. mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fem. neut.
Nom. qui, quæ, quod	Nom. qui, quæ, quæ
Gen. cujus, cujus, cuius	Gen. quorum, quorum
Dat. cui, cui, cui	Dat. quibus, quibus, quibus or queis
Acc. quem, quam, quod	Acc. quos, quas, quæ
Voc.	Voc.
Abl. { quo, quâ, quo qui, qui }	Abl. quibus, quibus or quibus

Sing.	{ no. quisquis, whatsoever : quicquid, whatsoever.			
	{ acc. quicquid, whatsoever.			
	{ abl. quoquo	Masc. Fœm. Neut.		
	quoquâ	quoquo		

Ob.

Observations.

1 The Pronoun Substantives, Ego, Tu, Sui; are of the same gender with the noun whereof they are spoken: as, ego, spoken of a man, is the masculine gender; but, ego, spoken of a woman, is the feminine gender.

2 These five, meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, are declined like ~~Pouns~~ ~~Adjectives~~ ~~Adjectives~~ of three Terminations, saving that meus in the voc. case singular, maketh mi, mea, meum.

Nostras, gen. nostratis; vestras, gen. vestratis; cujus, gen. cujatis, are declined like foelix.

M.

F.

N.

3 Equismam, ecquænam, ecquodnam, or ecquidnam; is there any man, woman, or thing; cæteris caret.

4 Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque, Neuter only: gen. cujuscunque, &c. whatsoever.

5 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam: gen. cujusdam, some certain person: quivis, quævis, quodvis, or quidvis: gen. cujusvis, &c. any man.

Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, or quidlibet: gen. cujuslibet, &c. who that will.

6 The Compounds of quis, make the feminine gender in the singular number, and neuter in the plural qua not quæ: as,

Nequis, nequa, nequid, lest any man: aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, or aliquid, some body.

Ecquis, bath ecquæ, and ecqua, in singular and plural.

7 Quis

Of a Verb.

7 Quis in old Authors is used in the feminine gender: Quis hæc est, Plaut. in Stich. ac. 2. sc. 2.

Hiccine! *is this he here?*

Singulariter	Nom. hiccine, hæccine, hoccine.	Pluraliter	no. & ac. } hæc-cine
	Acc. hunc-cine, hanc-cine.		
	Abl. hoccine, haccine, hoccine.		

Istic, *the self same.*

Singulariter	no. istic, istæc, istoc, or istuc.	Pluraliter	Nom. & Acc. } istæc.
	ac. istunc, istanc, istoc, or istuc.		
	abl. istoc, istac, istoc.		

In like manner illic, illæc, illoc, is declined.

Eccum, of ecce, and is.

<i>Sin.</i>	{	Acc. eccum,	{	<i>lo he or shee is here.</i>
		eccam,		
<i>Plu.</i>	{	Acc. eccos,	{	<i>lo, these men, or these</i>
		eccas,		<i>women be here.</i>
<i>So ellum, of ecce and ille, see where hee is.</i>				

A Verb.

A Verb is a word declined with Mood and Tense, and betokeneth, 1 doing: 2 suffering: 3 being.

There

Of a Verb.

There are four kinds of Verbs:

1 Active, 2 Passive, 3 Neuter, 4 Deponent.

1. A Verb Active endeth in o, and betokeneth to do: as, amo, I love: and by putting to r, it may be a Passive: as, amor.

2. A Verb Passive endeth in or, and betokeneth to suffer: as, amor, I am loved: and by putting away r, it may be an Active: as, amo.

3. A Verb Neuter endeth in o, or m, and cannot take r, to make it a Passive: It signifieth

sometimes, { 1 doing: as, curro, I run.
2 suffering: as, ægroto, I am sick.
3 being: as, sum, I am.

4. A Verb Deponent endeth in or, like a Passive, but signifies actively: as, loquor, I speak: or, absolutely: as, orior, I arise.

Verbs Common are now out of use and reduced to Verbs Deponents.

Observations.

1. A Verb Passive is discerned by some sign of the Tenses Passive joyned therewith: as, am, art, is, are, was, were, be, been.

2. A Verb Deponent endeth in or, and hath no passive sign joyned therewith: as, scitor, I demand; scrutor, I search. Where the Verb in English is spoken passively, and in Latine it is found a Deponent, the English must be changed actively: as, Then is counsel good, when it is best followed; i. e. when we best follow it.

3. A Verb Active like a Noun Adjective, leaveth the mind unsatisfied, without the help

3. The Subjunctive Mood dependeth of some other Verb in the same sentence, with some Conjunction, or Indefinite * coming between: as, vide quid agas, look what thou doest.

This Mood is sometimes used in wishing or desiring, and then it is called the Optative Mood: as, utinam amem, I pray God I love.

Sometimes it signifieth a power, duty, or desire, expressed in the English, by these signs, may, can, might, would, could, should, or ought: as, amem, I may, or can love, and then it is called the Potential Mood.

4. The Infinitive Mood followeth another Verb or Adjective, and hath this sign to: as, cupio discere, I desire to learn; except after possum, queo, nequeo, volo, nolo, debeo, I must.

There are added to the Infinitive Mood three voices called Gerunds, ending

in { 1 di, } amandi, of loving.
 { 2 do, } amando, in loving.
 { 3 dum, } amandum, to love.

There are also two Supines: the former ending in um, for the * most part signifieth actively: as, amatum, to love.

The other endeth in u, and signifieth passively: as, amatu, to be loved.

* It signifieth passively, when it is the Supine of a Neuter passive: as, vapulatum, to be beaten.

Tenses.

A Tense is a distinction of time, in regard of time present, time past, or time to come.

There are five Tenses or distinctions of time.

1. The

1. The Present Tense, speaketh of the time that now is: as, amo, I love: amor, I am loved.

2. The Preterimperfect Tense, speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past: as, amabam, I loved or did love: amabar, I was loved.

3. The Preterperfect Tense, speaketh of the time perfectly past: as, amavi, I have loved.

4. The Preterpluperfect Tense, speaketh of the time more then perfectly past: as, amaveram, I had loved.

5. The Future Tense, speaketh of the time to come: as, amabo, I shall or will love.

Signes of the Tenses.

Active.

Present Tense.
eth, est, doe.
doth, doth.

Preterimperfect Tense.
did, didst.

and a person or substantiv before a word ending in d, t, or n: as, he loved, he taught.

Preterperfect Tense.
have, hath, hast.

Passive.

Present Tense.
am, is, are, art.

Preterimperfect Tense.
was, were, wast.

Preterperfect Tense.
have been, hath been, hast been.

Preterpluper-

Active.

Preterpluperfect
Tense.
had, hadst.

Future Tense.
shall or will.

Potential Mood.
Present Tense.
may, or can.

Preterimperfect
Tense.
*might, would, could,
should.*

Passive.

Preterpluperfect
Tense.
had been, hadst been.

Future Tense.
shall be, or will be.

Potential Mood.
Present Tense.
may be, or can be.

Preterimperfect
Tense.
*might be, would be,
should be, could be.*

Observations:

M. Io.
Hemes.

1. The Preterimperfect Tense is translated by the Preterperfect Tense, unless where were is taken for should be: as, a man were happy, if he knew his misery, for should be happy, esset, scripsit Cato qui fuit fere ejus æqualis; Cato hath written, who was in a manner his like in years.

2. Had, after the Preterperfect Tense, is commonly a sign of the Preterpluperf. Tense: as, exolvit quod promiserat, he performed that which he had promised; but it admitteth of the sign of the Preterimperfect Tense also.

Sed cum amore pugnandi in exercitu remansisset; but when he for love of the wars remained in the Camp still. Cum extitisset etiam in Cives tanta crudelitas; when so great cruelty was shewed even against Citizens.

3. The

3. The Imperative Mood borroweth the Future Tense Indicative. as, valebis, meaque negotia videbis meque (Deo juvante) ante brumam expectabis; farewell, and have a care of my business, and look for me (God assisting) before Winter, and future Subjunctive: as, addideris.

4. When the Future Tense Subjunctive hath the sign hath, joined therewith, it is called the Future Preterperfect Tense: as, cum dixero, when I shall have spoken; cum peroravero, when I shall have finished.

Conjugations.

There are four Conjugations of Verbs, distinctly known by the vowel going before re in the Infinitive Mood, of Verbs in o, and the second person of the Present Indicative of Verbs in or.

The first Conjugation hath a long before re and ris: as, amare, amāris.

The second Conjugation hath e long before re and ris: as, docere, docēris.

The third Conjugation hath e short before re and ris: as, legere, legēris.

The fourth Conjugation hath i long before re and ris: as, audire, audīris.

Observations.

The first Conjugation is of Verbs in o, commonly with a consonant before o: as, amo,
1

Of Conjugations:

I love; except *beo*, to comfort; *meo*, to goe; *creo*, to create; *screo*, to spit; *calceo*, or *calcio*, to put on shoes; *cuneo*, to wedge; *laqueo*, to halter; *lineo*, to draw the figure of any thing in lines; *nauseo*, to have an appetite to vomit, or to despise; *nucleo*, to cover or hide; and some in *io*: *as*, *frio*, to crum; *hio*, to gape; *pio*, to purge sins; *travio*, to passe, or goe through; *gargaridio*, to prattle; and a few more.

The second Conjugation is of Verbs ending in *eo*: *as*, *doceo*: except *eo*, *queo*, *veneo*, of the fourth Conjugation, and those in *eo* before set down of the first.

The Third Conjugation is of Verbs in *o*, with a consonant before *o*, except a few in *io*: *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *capio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, & *statuo*.

The Fourth Conjugation is of Verbs in *io*, except *eo*, *pereo*, *queo*, *vaneio*.

The Declining of the Verb

Sum, I am.

Sum, *es*, *fui*, *esse*, *futurus*, to be.

Indicative Mood Present Tense:

Sing.	{	1	Sum,	I am.
		2	Es,	thou art.
		3	Est,	he is.
Plur.	{	1	Sumus,	We are.
		2	Estis,	ye are.
		3	Sunt,	they are.

Preter-

Of Verbs.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1	Eram,	I was.
		2	Eras,	thou wast.
		3	Erat,	he was.
Plur.	{	1	Eramus,	Wee were.
		2	Eratis,	ye were.
		3	Erant,	they were.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1	Fui,	I have been.
		2	Fuisti,	thou hast been.
		3	Fuit,	he hath been.
Plur.	{	1	Fuimus,	Wee have been.
		2	Fuistis,	ye have been.
		3	Fuerunt,	fuere, they have been.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1	Fueram,	I had been.
		2	Fueras,	thou hadst been.
		3	Fuerat,	he had been.
Plur.	{	1	Fueramus,	Wee had been.
		2	Fueratis,	ye had been.
		3	Fuerant,	they had been.

Future Tense.

Sing.	{	1	Ero,	I shall or will be.
		2	Eris,	thou shalt or will be.
		3	Erit,	he shall or will be.
Plur.	{	1	Erimus,	We shall or will be.
		2	Eritis,	ye shall or will be.
		3	Erunt,	they shall or will be.

D

Impe-

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	{ 2 }	Sis, es, or esto, be thou.
		Sit, or esto, let him be.
Plur.	{ 2 }	Sitis, este, or estote, be yee.
		Sint, or sunt, let them be.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

I have put *modò*, so that { Sing. } Sim, I am.
modò to the Subjunctive Mood, because it always governeth a Subjunctive Mood Englished so that.

{ Pluraliter } Simus, Wee are.
 Sitis, yee are.
 Sint, they are.

Preterimperfect Tense.

modò, so that { Sing. } Essem, I were.
 Effes, thou wert.
 Esset, hee were.
 { Plur. } Essemus, Wee were.
 Essetis, yee were.
 Essent, they were.

Preterperfect Tense.

modò, { Sing. } Fuerim, I have been.
 so that { } Fueris, thou hast been.
 { } Fuerit, he hath been.
 { Pluraliter } Fuerimus, Wee have been.
 { } Fueritis, yee have been.
 { } Fuerint, they have been.

Preterplu-

Preterpluperfect Tense.

modò, { Sing. } Fuissem, I had been.
 so that { } Fuissem, thou hadst been.
 { } Fuisset, he had been.
 { Pluraliter } Fuissemus, Wee had been.
 { } Fuissetis, yee had been.
 { } Fuissent, they had been.

Future Tense.

modò, { Sing. } Fuero, I shall or will be.
 so that { } Fueris, thou shalt or will be.
 { } Fuerit, hee shall or will be.
 { Pluraliter } Fuerimus, Wee shall or will be.
 { } Fueritis, ye shall or will be.
 { } Fuerint, they shall or will be.

Infinitive Mood.

Present Tense. Esse, to bee.

Preterimperf. Tense.

Preterperfect Tense.

Preterpluperf. Tense.

Fuisse, to have of had been.

Future Tense.

Fore, or

to bee

Futurum esse,

hereafter.

The Englishes of Sum, am, is, are, art, was, wast, were, wert, been.

To be, coming next after any of the Englishes of Sum, or after any Substantive, or person, is a sign of the Participle in dus.

Observations.

The Compounds of Sum, absum, to be absent:
 D 2

absent : *adsum*, to be present : *desum*, to be wanting : *insum*, to be in : *intersum*, to be present : *obsum*, to hurt : *prosum*, to profit : *supersum*, to remain, are Declined like *Sum*.

*Euphonie
gratiâ.*

2. *Prosum*, in those Tenses and Persons, which begin with a Vowel, for sound sake, interpose *d* : *as*, *prodes*, *prodest*, *proderam*, *prodero*, *prodesse*.

3. *Possum*, Compounded of *potis*, and *sum*, to be able, is thus Declined ;

Indicative Mood.

Present } 1 *Possum*, 2 *potes*, 3 *potest*. *Pl.*
Tense. } 1 *possumus*, 2 *potestis*, 3 *possunt*.
Preter- } *Poteram*, *poteras*, *poterat*. *Pl.* *po-*
imperf. } *teramus*, *poteratis*, *poterant*.
Pret. } *potui*, *potuisti*, *potuit*. *pl.* *potuimus*,
perf. } *potuistis*, *potuerunt*, *potuere*.
Pret. } *potueram*, *potueras*, *potuerat*. *pl.* *po-*
plu. } *tueramus*, *potueratis*, *potuerant*.
Fut. } *potero*, *poteris*, *poterit*. *pl.* *poterimus*,
} *poteritis*, *poterunt*.

Possum wants the *Imperative Mood*.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pret. } *Possim*, *possis*, *possit*. *pl.* *possimus*, *pos-*
tens. } *sitis*, *possint*.
Pret. } *possem*, *posses*, *posset*. *pl.* *possemus*,
imp. } *possetis*, *possent*.
Pret. } *potuerim*, *potueris*, *potuerit*. *pl.* *po-*
perf. } *tuerimus*, *potueritis*, *potuerint*.
Pret. } *potuissem*, *potuisses*, *potuisset*. *Pl.*
plu. } *potuissemus*, *potuissetis*, *potuissent*.
Fut. } *potuere*, *potueris*, *potuerit*. *Pl.* *potue-*
} *rimus*, *potueritis*, *potuerint*.

Infinitive Mood.

Posse, to be able.

Potuisse, to have or had been able.

Decli-

Declining of Verbs, with un- derstanding thus.

Active.

A *Mo*, the first person singular of the present tense.

Amas, the second person singular of the present tense.

Amavi, the first person singular of the preterperfect tense.

Amare, the Infinitive Mood.

Amandi, the Gerund in *di*.

Amando, the Gerund in *do*.

Amandum, the Gerund in *dum*.

Amatum, the first Supine.

Amatu, the latter Supine.

Amans, the Participle of the present tense.

Amaturus, the Participle of the Future in *rus*.

Passive.

Amor, the first person singular of the present tense.

Amaris, or *amare*, the second person sing. of the present tense.

Amatus sum, or *amatus fui*, the first person of the preterperfect tense.

Amari, the Infinitive Mood.

Amatus, the participle of the preterperfect tense.

Amandus, the participle of the Future in *dus*.

D 3

Verbs

Active Voice.

Verbs in [o] of the Four Conjugations.

1. Amo, amas, amavi, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amatum, amatu, amans, amaturus, to love.

2. Doceo, doces, docui, docere, docendi, docendo, docendum, doctum, doctu, docens, docturus.

3. Lego, legis, legi, legere, legendi, legendo, legendum, lectum, lectu, legens, lecturus.

4. Audio, audis, audivi, audire, audiendi, audiendo, audiendum, auditum, auditu, audiens, auditurus.

Indicative Mood.

1 Conjug.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{	1	A	Mo, I love.
		2		Amas, thou lovest.
		3		Amat, he loveth.
Plur.	{	1		Amamus, Wee love.
		2		Amatis, yee love.
		3		Amant, they love.

Terminations.

1 Am/o, 2 as, 3 at. Plu. 1 amus, 2 atis, 3 ant. Verbs.

Passive Voice.

Verbs in [or] of the Four Conjugations.

1. Amor, amaris, or amare, amatus sum, or amatus fui, amari, amatus, amandus.

2. Doceor, doceris, or docere, doctus sum, or doctus fui, doceri, doctus, docendus.

3. Legor, legeris, or legere, lectus sum, or lectus fui, legi, lectus, legendus.

4. Audior, audiris, or audire, auditus sum, or auditus fui, audiri, auditus, audiendus.

Indicative Mood.

1 Conjug.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{	1	A	Mo, I am loved.
		2		{ Amaris, or Amare, } thou art loved.
		3		Amatur, he is loved.
Plur.	{	1		Amamur, Wee are loved.
		2		Amamini, yee are loved.
		3		Amantur, they are loved.

Terminations.

1 Am/or, { 2 aris, are, 3 atur. Plu. 1 amur, 2 amini, 3 antur. Sing. D 4

2 Conjug.

Sing.	1	Doceo, I teach.
	2	Doces, thou teachest.
	3	Docet, he teacheth.
Plur.	1	Docemus, We teach.
	2	Docetis, yee teach.
	3	Docent, they teach.

Terminations.

1 Doc|eo, 2 es, 3 et. Pl. 1 emus, 2 etis, 3 ent.

3 Conjug.

Sing.	1	Lego, I read.
	2	Legis, thou readest.
	3	Legit, he readeth.
Plur.	1	Legimus, We read.
	2	Legitis, yee read.
	3	Legunt, they read.

Terminations.

Leg|o, is, it. Pl. imus, itis, unt.

4 Conjug.

Singulariter	1	Audio, I hear.
	2	Audis, thou hearest.
	3	Audit, he heareth.
Pluraliter	1	Audimus, We hear.
	2	Auditis, yee hear.
	3	Audiunt, they hear.

Terminations.

Aud|io, is, it. Pl. imus, itis, iunt.

Preter-

2 Conjug.

Sing.	1	Doceor, I am taught.
	2	Doceris, or Docere, thou art taught.
	3	Docetur, hee is taught.
Plur.	1	Docemur, Wee are taught.
	2	Docemini, yee are taught.
	3	Docentur, they are taught.

Terminations.

1. Doc|or, 2 eris, or ere, 3 etur. Pl. 1 emur, 2 emini, 3 entur.

3 Conjug.

Sing.	1	Legor, I am read.
	2	Legeris, or Legere, thou art read.
	3	Legitur, hee is read.
Plur.	1	Legimur, Wee are read.
	2	Legimini, yee are read.
	3	Leguntur, they are read.

Terminations.

Leg|or, eris, or ere, etur. Pl. imur, imini, untur.

4 Conjug.

Sing.	1	Audior, I am heard.
	2	Audiris, or Audire, thou art heard.
	3	Auditur, he is heard.
Plur.	1	Audimur, Wee are heard.
	2	Audimini, yee are heard.
	3	Audiuntur, they are heard.

Terminations.

Aud|ior, iris, or ire, itur. Pl. imur, imini, iuntur.

D. 5

Preter-

Active Voice.

Preterimperfect Tense.

1 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Amabam, *I loved, or did love.*
 { 2 } Amabas, *thou lovedst or didst love.*
 { 3 } Amabat, *hee loved, or did love.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amabamus, *Wee loved, or did love.*
 { 2 } Amabatis, *yee loved, or did love.*
 { 3 } Amabant, *they loved, or did love.*

Terminations.

Am|abam, abas, abat. Pl. abamus, abatis, abant.

2 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docebam, *I taught, or did teach.*
 { 2 } Docebas, *thou taughtst or did teach.*
 { 3 } Docebat, *he taught or did teach.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docebamus, *We taught or did teach.*
 { 2 } Docebatis, *yee taught or did teach.*
 { 3 } Docebant, *they taught or did teach.*

Terminations.

Doc|ebam, ebas, ebat. Pl. ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

3 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Legebam, *I read or did.*
 { 2 } Legebas, *thou read'st or did read.*
 { 3 } Legebat, *he read or did read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legebamus, *We read or did read.*
 { 2 } Legebatis, *yee read or did read.*
 { 3 } Legebant, *they read or did read.*

Terminations.

Leg|ebam, ebas, ebat. Pl. ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Sing.

Passive Voice.

Preterimperfect tense.

1 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Amabar, *I was loved.*
 { 2 } Amabaris, *or thou wast loved.*
 { 3 } Amabare, *hee was loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amabamur, *Wee were loved.*
 { 2 } Amabamini, *yee were loved.*
 { 3 } Amabantur, *they were loved.*

Terminations.

Am|abar, abaris, or abare, abatur. Pl. abamur, abamini, abantur.

2 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docebar, *I was taught.*
 { 2 } Docebaris, *or thou wast taught.*
 { 3 } Docebare, *hee was taught.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docebamur, *Wee were taught.*
 { 2 } Docebamini, *yee were taught.*
 { 3 } Docebantur, *they were taught.*

Terminations.

Doc|ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur. Pl. ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.

3 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Legebar, *I was read.*
 { 2 } Legebaris, *or thou wast read.*
 { 3 } Legebare, *hee was read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legebamur, *Wee were read.*
 { 2 } Legebamini, *yee were read.*
 { 3 } Legebantur, *they were read.*

Terminations.

Leg|ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur. Pl. ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.

Sing.

Active Voice.

4. Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Audiebam, *I heard, or did hear.*
 { 2 } Audiebas, *thou heard'st, or didst hear.*
 { 3 } Audiebat, *hee heard or did hear.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiebamus, *we heard or did hear.*
 { 2 } Audiebatis, *yee heard or did hear.*
 { 3 } Audiebant, *they heard or did hear.*

Terminations.

Audiebam, iebas, iebat. Pl. iebamus, iebatis, iebant.

Preterperfect Tense.

a. Conjug.

- Singulariter { 1 } Amavi, *I have loved.*
 { 2 } Amavisti, *thou hast loved.*
 { 3 } Amavit, *hee hath loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amavimus, *Wee have loved.*
 { 2 } Amavistis, *yee have loved.*
 { 3 } { Amavêrunt, } *they have loved.*
 { Amavere, }

Terminations.

Amavi, isti, it. Pl. imus, istis, êrunt, êre.

a. Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docui, *I have taught.*
 { 2 } Docuisti, *thou hast taught.*
 { 3 } Docuis, *he hath taught.*

Plur.

Passive Voice.

4. Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Audiebar, *I was heard.*
 { 2 } { Audiebaris, } *thou wast heard.*
 { or }
 { 3 } Audiebare, }
 Audiebatur, *hee was heard.*

- Plur. { 1 } Audiebamur, *wee were heard.*
 { 2 } Audiebamini, *yee were heard.*
 { 3 } Audiebantur, *they were heard.*

Terminations.

Audiebar, iebaris, or iebare, iebatur. Pl. iebamur, iebamini, iebantur.

Preterperfect Tense.

- Singulariter { 1 } Amatus sum, or fui, *I have been loved.*
 { 2 } Amatus es, or fuisti, *thou hast been loved.*
 { 3 } Amatus est, or fuit, *hee hath been loved.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Amati sumus, or fuimus, *wee have been loved.*
 { 2 } Amati estis, or fuistis, *yee have been loved.*
 { 3 } Amati sunt, or fuerunt, fuêre, *they have been loved.*

- Sing. { 1 } Doctus sum, or fui, *I have been taught.*
 { 2 } Doctus es, or fuisti, *thou hast been taught.*
 { 3 } Doctus est, or fuit, *he hath been taught.*

Plur.

Active Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Docuimus, *Wee have taught.*
 { 2 } Docuistis, *ye have taught.*
 { 3 } { Docuêrunt
or
Docuêre, } *they have taught.*
 Terminations.

Docu|i,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, êrunt, êre.

3 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Legi, *I have read.*
 { 2 } Legisti, *thou hast read.*
 { 3 } Legit, *hee hath read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legimus, *Wee have read.*
 { 2 } Legistis, *ye have read.*
 { 3 } { Legêrunt
or
Legêre, } *they have read.*
 Terminations.

Legi,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, êrunt, or êre.

4 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Audivi, *I have heard.*
 { 2 } Audivisti, *thou hast heard.*
 { 3 } Audivit, *hee hath heard.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audivimus, *Wee have heard.*
 { 2 } Audivistis, *ye have heard.*
 { 3 } { Audivêrunt
or
Audivêre, } *they have heard.*
 Terminations.

Audiv|i,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, êrunt, êre.
 Preter-

Passive Voice:

- Plur. { 1 } Docti sumus, or fuimus, *Wee have been taught.*
 { 2 } Docti estis or fuistis, *ye have been taught.*
 { 3 } Docti sunt fuêrunt or fuêre, *they have been taught.*

- Sing. { 1 } Lectus sum or fui, *I have been read.*
 { 2 } Lectus es or fuisti, *thou hast been read.*
 { 3 } Lectus est or fuit, *hee hath been read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Lecti sumus or fuimus, *wee have been read.*
 { 2 } Lecti estis or fuistis, *ye have been read.*
 { 3 } Lecti sunt fuêrunt, or fuêre, *they have been read.*

- Sing. { 1 } Auditus sum or fui, *I have been heard.*
 { 2 } Auditus es or fuisti, *thou hast been heard.*
 { 3 } Auditus est or fuit, *hee hath been heard.*
 Plur. { 1 } Auditi sumus or fuimus, *We have been heard.*
 { 2 } Auditi estis, or fuistis, *ye have been heard.*
 { 3 } Auditi sunt fuêrunt or fuêre, *they have been heard.*

Preter-

Preterpluperfect Tense.

* Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Amaveram, *I had loved.*
 { 2 } Amaveras, *thou hadst loved.*
 { 3 } Amaverat, *hee had loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amaveramus, *Wee had loved.*
 { 2 } Amaveratis, *yee had loved.*
 { 3 } Amaverant, *they had loved.*

Terminations.

Amav|eram, eras, erat. Pl. eramus, eratis, erant.

2 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docueram, *I had taught.*
 { 2 } Docueras, *thou hadst taught.*
 { 3 } Docuerat, *hee had taught.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Docueramus, *wee had taught.*
 { 2 } Docueratis, *yee had taught.*
 { 3 } Docuerant, *they had taught.*

Terminations.

Docu|eram, eras, erat. Pl. eramus, eratis, erant.

3 Conjug.

- Singulariter { 1 } Legeram, *I had read.*
 { 2 } Legeras, *thou hadst read.*
 { 3 } Legerat, *he hath heard.*

Plur.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Conjug.

- Singulariter { 1 } Amatus erā, or fuerā, *I had been loved.*
 { 2 } Amatus eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been loved.*
 { 3 } Amatus erat, or fuerat, *he had been loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amati eramus, or fueramus, *wee had been loved.*
 { 2 } Amati eratis, or fueratis, *ye had been loved.*
 { 3 } Amati erant, or fuerant, *they had been loved.*

- Singulariter { 1 } Doctus eram, or fueram, *I had been taught.*
 { 2 } Doctus eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been taught.*
 { 3 } Doctus erat, or fuerat, *he had been taught.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Docti eramus, or fueramus, *wee had been taught.*
 { 2 } Docti eratis, or fueratis, *yee had been taught.*
 { 3 } Docti erant, or fuerant, *they had been taught.*

- Singulariter { 1 } Lectus eram, or fueram, *I had been read.*
 { 2 } Lectus eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been read.*
 { 3 } Lectus erat, or fuerat, *hee had been read.*
 Plur.

Active Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Legeramus, *Wee had read.*
 { 2 } Legeratis, *yee had read.*
 { 3 } Legerant, *they had read.*

Terminations.

Leg^{er}am,eras,erat. Pl. eramus,eratis,erant.

- 4 Conjug. Singulariter { 1 } Audiveram, *I had heard.*
 { 2 } Audiveras, *thou hadst heard.*
 { 3 } Audiverat, *hee had heard.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Audiveramus, *Wee had heard,*
 { 2 } Audiveratis, *yee had heard.*
 { 3 } Audiverant, *they had heard.*

Terminations.

Audiv^{er}am,eras,erat. Pl. eramus,eratis,erant.

Future Tense.

- 1 Conjug. Singulariter { 1 } Amabo, *I shall or will love.*
 { 2 } Amabis, *thou shalt or wilt love.*
 { 3 } Amabit, *he shall or will love.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amabimus, *Wee shall or will love.*
 { 2 } Amabitis, *yee shall or will love.*
 { 3 } Amabunt, *they shall or will love.*

Terminations.

Am^{abo},abis,abit. Pl. abimus,abitis,abunt.
 Sing.

Passive Voice.

- Pluraliter { 1 } Lecti eramus or lecti fueramus, *Wee had been read.*
 { 2 } Lecti eratis, or lecti fueratis, *yee had been read.*
 { 3 } Lecti erant, or lecti fuerant, *they had been read.*

- Singulariter { 1 } Auditus eram, or fueram, *I had been heard.*
 { 2 } Auditus eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been heard.*
 { 3 } Auditus erat, or fuerat, *hee had been heard.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Auditi eramus, or fueramus, *we had been heard.*
 { 2 } Auditi eratis, or fueratis, *ye had been heard.*
 { 3 } Auditi erant, or fuerant, *they had been heard.*

Future Tense.

- Singulariter { 1 } Amabor, *I shall or will be loved.*
 { 2 } { Amabaris, } *thou shalt or will be loved.*
 or
 Amabare, }
 { 3 } Amabitur, *he shall or will be loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amabimur, *Wee shall or will be loved.*
 { 2 } Amabimini, *yee shall or will be loved.*
 { 3 } Amabuntur, *they shall or will be loved.*

Terminations.

Am^{abor},abēris,abēre,abitur. Pl. abimur
 abimini,abuntur. Sing.

Active Voice.

2 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docebo, *I shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docebis, *thou shalt or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docebit, *he shall or will teach.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docebimus, *we shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docebitis, *ye shall or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docebunt, *they shall or will teach.*
Terminations.
 Doc|ebo,ebis,ebit. Pl. ebimus,ebitis,ebunt.

3 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Legam, *I shall or will read.*
 { 2 } Leges, *thou shalt or will read.*
 { 3 } Leget, *he shall or will read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legemus, *we shall or will read.*
 { 2 } Legetis, *ye shall or will read.*
 { 3 } Legent, *they shall or will read.*
Terminations.
 Leg|am, es, et. Pl. emus, etis, ent.

4 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Audiam, *I shall or will hear.*
 { 2 } Audies, *thou shalt or will hear.*
 { 3 } Audiet, *he shall or will hear.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiemus, *we shall or will hear.*
 { 2 } Audietis, *ye shall or will hear.*
 { 3 } Audient, *they shall or will hear.*
Terminations.
 Aud|iam,ies,iet. Pl. iemus,ietis,ient.

Impera-

Passive Voice.

2 Conjug.

- Singulariter { 1 } Docebor, *I shall or will be taught.*
 { 2 } { Doceberis, } *thou shalt or will be*
 or { Docebere, } *taught.*
 { 3 } Docebitur, *he shall or will be taught.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docebimur, *we shall or will be taught.*
 { 2 } Docebumini, *ye shall or will be taught.*
 { 3 } Docebuntur, *they shall or will be taught.*
Terminations.

Doc|ebor,eberis,or ebere,ebitur. Pl. ebimur, ebimini, ebuntur.

3 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Legar, *I shall or will be read.*
 { 2 } { Legêris, or } *thou shalt or will*
 { Legêre, } *be read.*
 { 3 } Legêtur, *he shall or will be read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legémur, *we shall or will be read.*
 { 2 } Legémini, *ye shall or will be read.*
 { 3 } Legentur, *they shall or will be read.*
Terminations.

Leg|ar, êris, or êre, etur. Pl. émur, émini, entur,

4 Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Audiar, *I shall or will be heard.*
 { 2 } { Audiêris, or } *thou shalt or will*
 { Audiêre, } *be heard.*
 { 3 } Audietur, *he shall or will be heard.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiemur, *we shall or will be heard.*
 { 2 } Audiemini, *ye shall or will be heard.*
 { 3 } Audientur, *they shall or will be heard.*
Terminations.

Aud|iar,iêris,or iêre,ietur. Pl. iemur,iemini,ientur.

Impe-

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

1 Conjug.

Singulariter	2	{ Ama, or Amato, Amet,	{ love thou.
	3	{ or Amato,	{ let him love.
	1	Amemus,	{ let us love.
Pluraliter	2	{ Amate, or Amatote, Ament,	{ love yee.
	3	Amanto,	{ let them love.

Terminations.

2 Am|a, ato, 3 et, ato. Pl. 1 emus, 2 ate, atote, 3 ent, anto.

2 Conjug.

Singulariter	2	{ Doce, or Doceto, Doceat,	{ teach thou.
	3	{ or Doceto,	{ let him teach.
	1	Doceamus,	{ let us teach.
Pluraliter	2	{ Docete, or Docetote, Doceant,	{ teach ye.
	3	{ or Docento,	{ let them teach.

Terminations.

2 Doc|e, eto, 3 eat, eto. Pl. 1 eamus, 2 ete, etote, 3 eant, ento.

Sing.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

1 Conjug.

Sing.	2	{ Amare, or Amator, Ametur,	{ be thou loved.
	3	{ or Amator,	{ let him be loved.
	1	Amemur,	{ let us be loved.
Pluraliter	2	{ Amamini, or Amaminor, Amentur,	{ be yee loved.
	3	{ or Amanrur,	{ let them be loved.

Terminations.

2 Am|are, ator, 3 etor, ator. Pl. 1 emur, 2 amini, aminor, 3 entur, antor.

2 Conjug.

Singulariter	2	{ Docere, or Docetor, Doceatur,	{ be thou taught.
	3	{ or Docetor,	{ let him be taught.
	1	Doceamur,	{ let us be taught.
Pluraliter	2	{ Docemini, or Doceminor, Doceantur,	{ be ye taught.
	3	{ or Docentur,	{ let them be taught.

Terminations.

2 Doc|ere, etor, 3 catur, etor, Pl. 1 eamur, 2 emini, emisor, 3 eantur, entor.

Sing.

Active Voice.

Sing.	2	Lege,	}	read thou.
		or		
	3	Legito,	}	let him read.
		or		
		Legato,		
Pluraliter	1	Legamus,	}	let us read.
	2	Legite,		
	3	Legant,	}	let them read.
		or		
		Legunto,		

Terminations.

2 Leg|e, ito, 3 at, ito. Pl. 1 amus, 2 ite, ito-
re, 3 ant, unto.

Singulariter	2	Audi,	}	hear thou.
		or		
	3	Audito,	}	let him hear.
		or		
		Audiat,		
Plur.	1	Audiamus,	}	let us hear.
	2	Audite,		
	3	Audiant,	}	hear yee.
		or		
		Audiantur,		
		Audiunto,		

2 Aud|i, ito, 3 iat, ito. Pl. 1 iamus, 2 ite,
itote. 3 iant, iunto.

Subjunctive

Passive Voice.

Sing.	2	Legere,	}	be thou read.
		or		
	3	Legitor,	}	let him be read.
		or		
		Legatur,		
Plur.	1	Legamur,	}	let us be read.
	2	Legimini,		
	3	Leguntur,	}	let them be read.
		or		
		Leguntor,		

Terminations.

2 Leg|ere, or itor, 3 atur, itor. Pl. 1 amur,
2 imini, iminor, 3 antur, untor.

Singulariter	2	Audire,	}	be thou heard.
		or		
	3	Auditor,	}	let him be heard.
		or		
		Audiatur,		
Plur.	1	Audiamur,	}	let us be heard.
	2	Audimini,		
	3	Audiantur,	}	let them be heard.
		or		
		Audiuntur,		

Terminations.

2 Aud|ire, itor, 3 iatur, itor. Pl. 1 iamur,
2 imini, iminor, 3 iantur, iuntor.

E

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

1 Conjug. Modò, *so that*,
 Sing. { 1 } Amem, *I love.*
 { 2 } Ames, *thou lovest.*
 { 3 } Amet, *he loveth.*

Plur. { 1 } Amemus, *wee love.*
 { 2 } Ameris, *yee love.*
 { 3 } Ament, *they love.*

Terminations.

1 Am|em, 2 es, 3 et. Pl. 1 emus, 2 etis,
 3 ent.

2 Conjug. Modò, *so that*,
 Sing. { 1 } Doceam, *I teach.*
 { 2 } Doceas, *thou teachest.*
 { 3 } Doceat, *he teacheth.*

Plur. { 1 } Doceamus, *we teach.*
 { 2 } Doceatis, *yee teach.*
 { 3 } Doceant, *they teach.*

Terminations.

Doc|eam, eas, eat, Pl. eamus, eatis, eant.

3 Conjug. Modò, *so that*,
 Sing. { 1 } Legam, *I read.*
 { 2 } Legas, *thou readest.*
 { 3 } Legat, *he readeth.*

Plur.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Modò, *so that*,
 Sing. { 1 } Amer, *I am loved.*
 { 2 } { Ameris,
 or
 Amere, } *thou art loved.*
 { 3 } Ametur, *he is loved.*

Plur. { 1 } Amemur, *we are loved.*
 { 2 } Amemini, *yee are loved.*
 { 3 } Amentur, *they are loved.*

Terminations.

Am|er,eris,or ere,etur. Pl. emur,emini,entur

Modò, *so that*,
 Sing. { 1 } Docear, *I am taught.*
 { 2 } { Docearis,
 or
 Doceare, } *thou art taught.*
 { 3 } Doceatur, *he is taught.*
 Plur. { 1 } Doceamur, *we are taught.*
 { 2 } Doceamini, *yee are taught.*
 { 3 } Doceantur, *they are taught.*

Terminations.

Doc|ear,earis,or eare,eatur. Pl. eamur,ea-
 mini,eantur.

Modò, *so that*,
 Singular { 1 } Legar, *I am read.*
 { 2 } { Legaris,
 or
 Legare, } *thou art read.*
 { 3 } Legatur, *he is read.*

E 2

Plur.

1 Conjug.

2 Conjug.

3 Conjug.

- Plur. { 1 } Legamus, *wee read.*
 { 2 } Legatis, *ye read.*
 { 3 } Legant, *they read.*
Terminations.

Leg|am, as, at. Pl. amus, atis, ant.

- 4 Conjug. Modò, *so that,*
 Singulariter { 1 } Audiam, *I hear.*
 { 2 } Audias, *thou hearest.*
 { 3 } Audiat, *he heareth.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiamus, *we hear.*
 { 2 } Audiatis, *ye hear.*
 { 3 } Audiant, *they hear.*
Terminations.
 Aud|iam, ias, iat. Plu. iamus, iatis, iant.

Preterimperfect Tense.

- 1 Conjug. Modò, *so that,*
 Singulariter { 1 } Amarem, *I loved or did love.*
 { 2 } Amares, *thou lovedst or did love.*
 { 3 } Amaret, *hee loved or did love.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amaremus, *we loved or did love.*
 { 2 } Amaretis, *ye loved or did love.*
 { 3 } Amarent, *they loved or did love.*
Terminations.
 Am|arem, ares, aret. Pl. aremus, aretis, arent.

- 2 Conjug. Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Docerem, *I taught, or did teach.*
 { 2 } Doceres, *thou taughtst, or did teach.*
 { 3 } Doceret, *hee taught, or did teach.*

- Plur. { 1 } Legamur, *we are read.*
 { 2 } Legamini, *ye are read.*
 { 3 } Legantur, *they are read.*
Terminations.

Leg|ar, aris, or are, atur. Pl. amur, amini, antur.

- Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Audiar, *I am heard.*
 { 2 } { Audiaris, } *thou art heard.*
 { or }
 { Audiare, }
 { 3 } Audiatur, *hee is heard.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiamur, *we are heard.*
 { 2 } Audiamini, *ye are heard.*
 { 3 } Audiantur, *they are heard.*
Terminations.

Aud|iar, iaris, or iare, iatur. Plu. iamur, iami, ni, iantur.

Preterimperfect Tense.

- Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Amarer, *I was loved.*
 { 2 } { Amareris, } *thou wast loved.*
 { or }
 { Amarere, }
 { 3 } Amaretur, *hee was loved.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amaremur, *we were loved.*
 { 2 } Amaremini, *ye were loved.*
 { 3 } Amarentur, *they were loved.*
Terminations.

Am|arer, areris, or arere, aretur. Pl. aremur, aremini, arentur.

- Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Docerer, *I was taught.*
 { 2 } { Docereris, } *thou wast taught.*
 { or }
 { Docerere, }
 { 3 } Doceretur, *hee was taught.* Plur.

Active Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Doceremus, *we taught, or did teach.*
 { 2 } Doceretis, *yee taught, or did teach.*
 { 3 } Docerent, *they taught, or did teach.*

Terminations.

Doc|erem,eres,eret. Pl. eremus,eretis,erent.

- 3 Conjug. Modò, *so that,*
 Singulariter { 1 } Legerem, *I read or did read.*
 { 2 } Legeres, *thou readst, or did read.*
 { 3 } Legeret, *he read, or did read.*

- Plur. { 1 } Legeremus, *we read, or did read.*
 { 2 } Legeretis, *yee read, or did read.*
 { 3 } Legerent, *they read, or did read.*

Terminations.

Leg|erem,eres,eret. Pl. eremus,eretis,erent.

- 4 Conjug. Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Audirem, *I heard, or did hear.*
 { 2 } Audires, *thou heard'st or did hear.*
 { 3 } Audiret, *he heard, or did hear.*

- Plur. { 1 } Audiremus, *we heard, or did hear.*
 { 2 } Audiretis, *ye heard, or did hear.*
 { 3 } Audirent, *they heard, or did hear.*

Terminations.

Aud|irem,ires,iret. Pl. iremus,iretis,irent.

Preter-

Passive Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Doceremur, *we were taught.*
 { 2 } Doceremini, *yee were taught.*
 { 3 } Docerentur, *they were taught.*

Terminations.

Doc|erer,eris,or erere,eretur. Pl. eremur,eremini,erentur.

- Modò, *so that,*
 Singulariter { 1 } Legerer, *I was read.*
 { 2 } { Legereris, } *thou wast read.*
 { or }
 { Legerere, }
 { 3 } Legeretur, *he was read.*

- Plur. { 1 } Legeremur, *we were read.*
 { 2 } Legeremini, *yee were read.*
 { 3 } Legerentur, *they were read.*

Terminations.

Leg|erer,eris,or erere,eretur. Pl. eremur,eremini,erentur.

- Modò, *so that,*
 Sing. { 1 } Audirer, *I was heard.*
 { 2 } { Audireris, } *thou wast heard.*
 { or }
 { Audirere, }
 { 3 } Audiretur, *he was heard.*

- Plur. { 1 } Audiremur, *we were heard.*
 { 2 } Audiremini, *yee were heard.*
 { 3 } Audirentur, *they were heard.*

Terminations.

Aud|irer,ireris,or irere,iretur. Pl. iremur,iremini,irentur.

E 4

Preter-

Preterperfect Tense.

1 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Amaverim, I have loved.
	2	Amaveris, thou hast loved.
Sing.	3	Amaverit, hee hath loved.
	1	Amaverimus, we have loved.
	2	Amaveritis, yee have loved.
Pluraliter	3	Amaverint, they have loved.
	Terminations.	
	Amav erim,eris,erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint.	

2 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Docuerim, I have taught.
	2	Docueris, thou hast taught.
Sing.	3	Docuerit, hee hath taught.
	1	Docuerimus, we have taught.
	2	Docueritis, yee have taught.
Pluraliter	3	Docuererint, they have taught.
	Terminations.	
	Docu erim,eris,erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint	

3 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Legerim, I have read.
	2	Legeris, thou hast read.
Sing.	3	Legerit, hee hath read.

Plu:

Preterperfect tense.

1 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Amatus sim, or fuerim, I have been loved.
	2	Amatus sis, or fueris, thou hast been loved.
Sing.	3	Amatus sit, or fuerit, hee hath been loved.
	1	Amati simus, or fuerimus, we have been loved.
	2	Amati sitis, or fueritis, yee have been loved.
Plur.	3	Amati sint, or fuerint, they have been loved.

2 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Doctus sim, or fuerim, I have been taught.
	2	Doctus sis, or fueris, thou hast been taught.
Sing.	3	Doctus sit, or fuerit, he hath been taught.
	1	Docti simus, or fuerimus, we have been taught.
	2	Docti sitis, or fueritis, yee have been taught.
Plur.	3	Docti sint, or fuerint, they have been taught.

3 Conjug.	Modò, so that,	
	1	Lectus sim, or fuerim, I have been read.
	2	Lectus sis, or fueris, thou hast been read.
Sing.	3	Lectus sit, or fuerit, hee hath been read.

E 5

Plur.

Active Voice.

- Pluraliter {
 1 } Legerimus, *we have read.*
 2 } Legeritis, *ye have read.*
 3 } Legerint, *they have read.*

Terminations.

Leg|erim,eris,erit. Pl. erimus, eritis,erint.

Modò, *so that,*

4 Conjug.

- Sing. {
 1 } Audiverim, *I have heard,*
 2 } Audiveris, *thou hast heard.*
 3 } Audiverit, *he hath heard.*

- Pluraliter {
 1 } Audiverimus, *we have heard.*
 2 } Audiveritis, *ye have heard.*
 3 } Audiverint, *they have heard.*

Terminations.

Audiv|erim,eris,erit. Pl. erimus, eritis,erint.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Modò, *so that,*

1 Conjug.

- Sing. {
 1 } Amavissem, *I had loved.*
 2 } Amavisses, *thou hadst loved.*
 3 } Amavisset, *he had loved.*

- Plur. {
 1 } Amavissemus, *we had loved.*
 2 } Amavissetis, *ye had loved.*
 3 } Amavissent, *they had loved.*

Terminations.

Amav|issem,isses,isset. Plur. issemus,issetis,issent.

Sing.

Passive Voice.

- Plur. {
 1 } Lecti simus, or fuerimus, *we have been read.*
 2 } Lecti sitis, or fueritis, *ye have been read.*
 3 } Lecti sint, or fuerint, *they have been read.*

Modò, *so that,*

Singulariter

- {
 1 } Auditus sim, or fuerim, *I have been heard.*
 2 } Auditus sis, or fueris, *thou hast been heard.*
 3 } Auditus sit, or fuerit, *he hath been heard.*

- Plur. {
 1 } Auditi simus, or fuerimus, *we have been heard.*
 2 } Auditi sitis, or fueritis, *ye have been heard.*
 3 } Auditi sint, or fuerint, *they have been heard.*

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Modò, *so that,*

Singulariter

- {
 1 } Amatus essem, or fuisssem, *I had been loved.*
 2 } Amatus esses, or fuisses, *thou hadst been loved.*
 3 } Amatus esset, or fuisset, *he had been loved.*

- Pluraliter {
 1 } Amati essemus, or fuisssemus, *we had been loved.*
 2 } Amati essetis, or fuissetis, *ye had been loved.*
 3 } Amati essent, or fuissent, *they had been loved.*

Sing.

2 Conjug. Modò, so that,
 Sing. { 1 } Docuissē, I had taught.
 { 2 } Docuisses, thou hadst taught.
 { 3 } Docuisset, hee had taught.
 Plur. { 1 } Docuissēmus, we had taught.
 { 2 } Docuissetis, yee had taught.
 { 3 } Docuissent, they had taught.
 Terminations.
 Docuissē, issēs, issēt. Pl. issēmus, issētis,
 issent.

3 Conjug. Modò, so that,
 Sing. { 1 } Legissē, I had read.
 { 2 } Legisses, thou hadst read.
 { 3 } Legisset, hee had read.
 Plur. { 1 } Legissēmus, we had read.
 { 2 } Legissetis, yee had read.
 { 3 } Legissent, they had read.
 Terminations.
 Legissē, issēs, issēt. Pl. issēmus, issētis,
 issent.

4 Conjug. Modò, so that,
 Sing. { 1 } Audivissē, I had heard.
 { 2 } Audivisses, thou hadst heard.
 { 3 } Audivisset, he had heard.
 Plur.

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Doctus essem, or fuissē, I had been 2 Conjug.
 { 2 } Doctus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst been
 { 3 } Doctus esset, or fuisset, hee had been
 Pluraliter { 1 } Docti essemus, or fuissēmus, we had
 { 2 } Docti essetis, or fuissetis, yee had
 { 3 } Docti essent, or fuissent, they had been
 taught.

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Lectus essem, or fuissē, I had been 3 Conjug.
 { 2 } Lectus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst been
 { 3 } Lectus esset, or fuisset, hee had been
 Pluraliter { 1 } Lecti essemus, or fuissēmus, we had
 { 2 } Lecti essetis, or fuissetis, yee had been
 { 3 } Lecti essent, or fuissent, they had
 been read.

Modò, so that,
 Sing. { 1 } Auditus essem, or fuissē, I had been 4 Conjug.
 { 2 } Auditus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst
 { 3 } Auditus esset, or fuisset, he had been
 heard.

Plur.

Active Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Audivissimus, *we had heard.*
 { 2 } Audivissetis, *ye had heard.*
 { 3 } Audivissent, *they had heard.*

Terminations.

Audivissim, isses, issent. Pl. issimus, issentis, issent.

Future Tense.

Modò, *so that,*

1. Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Amavero, *I shall or will love.*
 { 2 } Amaveris, *thou shalt or will love.*
 { 3 } Amaverit, *he shall or will love.*
 Plur. { 1 } Amaverimus, *we shall or will love.*
 { 2 } Amaveritis, *ye shall or will love.*
 { 3 } Amaverint, *they shall or will love.*

Terminations.

Amavero, eris, erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint.

Modò, *so that,*

2. Conjug.

- Sing. { 1 } Docuero, *I shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docueris, *thou shalt or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docuerit, *he shall or will teach.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docuerimus, *we shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docueritis, *ye shall or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docuerint, *they shall or will teach.*

Sing.

Passive Voice.

- Plur. { 1 } Auditi essemus, or fuissimus, *wee had been heard.*
 { 2 } Auditi essetis, or fuissetis, *ye had been heard.*
 { 3 } Auditi essent, or fuissent, *they had been heard.*

Future Tense.

Modò, *so that,*

- Singulariter { 1 } Amatus ero, or fuero, *I shall or will be loved.* 1. Conjug.
 { 2 } Amatus eris, or fueris, *thou shalt or will be loved.*
 { 3 } Amatus erit, or fuerit, *he shall or will be loved.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Amati erimus, or fuerimus, *we shall or will be loved.*
 { 2 } Amati eritis, or fueritis, *ye shall or will be loved.*
 { 3 } Amati erint, or fuerint, *they shall or will be loved.*

Modò, *so that,*

- Singulariter { 1 } Doctus ero, or doctus fuero, *I shall or will be taught.* 2. Conjug.
 { 2 } Doctus eris, or doctus fueris, *thou shalt or will be taught.*
 { 3 } Doctus erit, or doctus fuerit, *he shall or will be taught.*
 Pluraliter { 1 } Docti erimus, or docti fuerimus, *wee shall or will be taught.*
 { 2 } Docti eritis, or docti fueritis, *ye shall or will be taught.*
 { 3 } Docti erint, or docti fuerint, *they shall or will be taught.*

Sing.

Modò, so that,	
3 Conjug.	
Singulariter	1 } Legero, I shall or will read.
	2 } Legeris, thou shalt or will read.
	3 } Legerit, hee shall or will read.
Plur.	1 } Legerimus, wee shall or will read.
	2 } Legeritis, yee shall or will read.
	3 } Legerint, they shall or will read.
Terminations.	
Leg ero, eris, erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint.	

Modò, so that,	
4 Conjug.	
Singulariter	1 } Audivero, I shall or will hear.
	2 } Audiveris, thou shalt or will hear.
	3 } Audiverit, he shall or will hear.
Plur.	1 } Audiverimus, we shall or will hear.
	2 } Audiveritis, yee shall or will hear.
	3 } Audiverint, they shall or will hear.

Infinitive

Modò, so that,	
	3 Conjug.
Singulariter	1 } Lectus ero, or lectus fuero, I shall or will be read.
	2 } Lectus eris, or lectus fueris, thou shalt or will be read.
	3 } Lectus erit, or lectus fuerit, hee shall or will be read.
Pluraliter	1 } Lecti erimus, or lecti fuerimus, wee shall or will be read.
	2 } Lecti eritis, or fueritis, yee shall or will be read.
	3 } Lecti erint, or fuerint, they shall or will be read.

Modò, so that,	
	4 Conjug.
Singulariter	1 } Auditus ero, or fuero, I shall or will be heard.
	2 } Auditus eris, or fueris, thou shalt or will be heard.
	3 } Auditus erit, or fuerit, he shall or will be heard.
Pluraliter	1 } Auditi erimus, or fuerimus, we shall or will hear.
	2 } Auditi eritis, or fueritis, yee shall or will hear.
	3 } Auditi erunt, or fuerint, they shall or will hear.

Infinitive

Infinitive Mood.

Present Tense.

- 1 } Amare, to love.
 2 } Docere, to teach.
 3 } Legere, to read.
 4 } Audire, to hear.

Terminations.

- 1 Am|are. 2 Doc|ēre. 3 Leg|ēre,
4 Aud|ire.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Preterperfect Tense.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

- 1 Amavisse, *to have or had loved.*
 2 Docuiffe, *to have or had taught.*
 3 Legiffe, *to have or had read.*
 4 Audiviffe, *to have or had heard.*

Termination *isse.*

Future

Infinitive Mood.

Present Tense.

- {
 1 } Amari, *to be loved.*
 2 } Doceri, *to be taught.*
 3 } Legi, *to be read.*
 4 } Audiri, *to be heard.*

Terminations.

- 1 Am | ari. 2 Doc | ēri. 3 Leg | i.
4 Aud | iri.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Preterperfect Tense.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

- Sing.** { 1 } Amatum { } esse, or fu-
 { 2 } Doctum { } ise, { } to have or had
 { 3 } Lectum { } been loved.
 { 4 } Auditum
- Plur.** { 1 } Amatos { } esse, or fu-
 { 2 } Doctos { } ise, { } to have or- had
 { 3 } Lectos { } themselves
 { 4 } Auditos { } to have
 obtained.

Future

Active Voice.

Future Tense.

- { 1 } Amaturum esse, to love hereafter.
 { 2 } Docturum esse, to teach hereafter.
 { 3 } Lecturum esse, to read hereafter.
 { 4 } Auditorum esse, to hear hereafter.

- { 1 } Amaturos, to love hereafter.
 { 2 } Docturos, to teach hereafter.
 { 3 } Lecturos, to read hereafter.
 { 4 } Audituros, to hear hereafter.

Participles.

- A Participle of the Pre. Tense. { Amans, loving.
 Docens, teaching.
 Legens, reading.
 Audiens, hearing.

- A Participle of the Future in rus.
 { Amaturus, to love, or about to love.
 Docturus, to teach, or about to teach.
 Lecturus, to read, or about to read.
 Auditorus, to hear, or about to hear.

Gerunds

Passive Voice.

Future Tense.

- { 1 } Amaturum iri,
 or
 Amandum esse, } to be loved hereafter.
 { 2 } Doctum iri,
 or
 Docendum esse, } to be taught hereafter.
 { 3 } Lectum iri,
 or
 Legendum esse, } to be read hereafter.
 { 4 } Auditum iri,
 or
 Audiendum esse, } to be heard hereafter.

Participles.

- A Participle of the Preter Tense. { Amatus, loved.
 Doctus, taught.
 Lectus, read.
 Auditus, heard.

- A Particip. of the Future in dus. { Amandus, to be loved.
 Docendus, to be taught.
 Legendus, to be read.
 Audiendus, to be heard.

Gerunds

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving : amando, in loving : amandum, to love. Docendi, of teaching : docendo, in teaching : docendum, to teach. Legendi, of reading : legendo, in reading : legendum, to read. Audiendi, of hearing : audiendo, in hearing : audiendum, to hear.

Volo, I will, or am willing : nolo, I will, or am unwilling : malo, I am more rather, or I am more willing : fero, to bear or suffer : edo, to eat : are of the Third Conjugation, declined like lego : saying that they vary in some Tenses as followeth.

Present Tense singular.

Volo, vis, vult. Pl. volumus, vultis, volunt. Nolo, non vis, non vult. Pl. Nolumus, non vultis, nolunt.

Malo, mavis, mavult. Pl. malumus, mavultis, malunt.

Fero, fers, fert. Pl. ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

Edo, edis, or es, edit, or est. Pl. Edimus, editis, or estis, edunt.

Imperative Mood singular.

Volo wants the Imperative Mood, and queo and nequeo want the Imperative Mood, and the Participle of the Present Tense.

2 Ede, edito, or es, esto. 3 Edat, edito, or esto. Pl. 1 Edamus. 2 Edite, editote, este, estote. 3 Edant, edunto.

Fer, ferro. Ferat, fert. Pl. Feramus, ferte, fertote. Ferant, ferunto.

Subjunctive Mood Present Tense.

Velim, velis, velit. Pl. Velimus, velitis, velint. Nolim, nolis, nolit, pl. nolimus, nolitis, nolint. Malim, malis, malit. Pl. Malimus, malitis, malint.

Preter-

Preterimperfect Tense.

Vellem, velles, vellet. Pl. Vellemus, velletis, vellent.

Nollem, nolles, nollet. Pl. Nollemus, nolletis, nollent.

Mallem, malles, mallet. Pl. Mallemus, malletis, mallent.

Ferrem, ferres, ferret. Pl. Ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.

Ederem, or essem. Ederes, esses. Ederet, esset. Pl. Ederemus, essemus. Ederetis, essetis. Ederent, essent.

Infinitive Mood Pres. Tense.

Velle, nolle. Malle, ferre. Edere, or esse.

Eo, I go, and queo, to may or can : also, to be able, with the Compounds nequeo and pereco, are of the fourth Conjugation, differing from audio.

1. Because they make the third person plural of the Present Tense Indicative, eunt, queunt, nequeunt.

2. They make the Preterimperfect Tense ibam : as,

Ibam, ibas, ibat. Pl. ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Quibam, quibas, quibat. Pl. Quibamus, quibatis, quibant. Sin. Nequibā, nequibas, nequibat. Pl. Nequibamus, nequibatis, nequibant.

3. They make the future Tense.

Sing. Ibo, ibis, ibit. Pl. Ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Quibo, quibus, quibit. Pl. Quibimus, quibitis, quibunt. Nequibo, nequibus, nequibit. Pl. Nequibimus, nequibitis, nequibunt.

Sometimes eo hath the Future Tense, eam, ies, iet : as, ineam, inies, iniet. Præteream, præteries, præteriet. Transeā, Transies, transiet, although the futures inibo, præteribo, transibo, are more usual.

4. In

4. In the Present Tense Subjunct. *eam, eas, eat. Pl. eamus, eatis, eant.*

Preterimperfect Tense.

Irem, Ires, iret. Pl. iremus, iretis, irent.

Ambio, barieth nothing in Mood and Tense from audio.

Let your scholar learn these perfectly.

Cognate Tenses, or Tenses agreeable, or very like in the Active voice.

	Preter	Pret. im.	Fut.	Pret.	Pret. im.	Pret.	Pret.
1 am	o	abam,	abo	a, ato	em	im. arem	Preter. are
2 doc	eo	ebam	ebo	e, eto	eam	erem	ere
3 leg	o	ebam	am	e, ito	am	erem	ere
4 aud	io	iebam	iam	i, ito	iam	irem	ire
Indic. Mood.				Imper. Mood. Subjun. Mood. Infinitive Mood.			

These Tenses are formed from the Present Tense Indicative.

The

The Cognate or agreeable Tenses, formed from the Preterperfect Tense Indicative.

	Preter-perf.	Pret. plu.	Preter-perf.	Preter-pluper.	Fut.	Preter-perf.
1 amav	i	eram	erim	issem	ero	isse
2 docu	i	eram	erim	issem	ero	isse
3 leg	i	eram	erim	issem	ero	isse
4 audiiv	i	eram	erim	issem	ero	isse
Indic. Mood.				Subjun. Mood. Infinitive Mood.		

Cognate

Cognate Tenses, or Tenses very like in the Passive Voice, formed from the Present Tense.

	Preter tense	Preter- imp.	Fut.	Preter Tense.	Preter	Preter- imp.	Pres.
1 am	or	abar	abor	are or ator	er	arer	ari
2 doc	eor	ebar	ebor	ēre or ētor	ear	ēter	eri
3 leg	or	ebar	ar	ēre, or itor	ar	ēter	i
4 aud	ior	ibar	iar	ire, or itor	iar	irer	iri
Indic. Mood.				Imper. Mood.	Subjun. Mood.	Infjn. Mood.	

Cognate

Cognate Tenses or Tenses very like in the Passive Voice, formed from the Preterperf. Tense.

	Preterperf.	Pret. plu. perf.	pret. per.	pret. plu.		
1 amat	{ sum or fui	eram or fueram	sum or fuerim	essem or fuissim	ero or fuero	{ esse or fuisse
2 doct	{ sum or fui	eram or fueram	sum or fuerim	essem or fuissim	ero or fuero	{ esse or fuisse
3 Lect	{ sum or fui	eram or fueram	sum or fuerim	essem or fuissim	ero or fuero	{ esse or fuisse
4 audit	{ sum or fui	eram or fueram	sum or fuerim	essem or fuissim	ero or fuero	{ esse or fuisse
Indicative Mood.				Subjun. Mood.	Infjn. Mood.	

These Periphrastical Tenses, or Tenses composed of sum, and the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense vary their Genders according to their Nominative case or Substantive. Dixisti injuriam esse factam.

F 2

The

The deseñed or reserved letters of Verbs in their severall Conjugations, which are to be put to the Terminations of the severall Tenses, are thus found.

Rule 1.

If the Verb be of the first or third Conjugation, cast away o from the first person singular of the Present Tense, and the remaining letters are for the Terminations of the severall Tenses coming thereof: as, am|o, am. leg|o. leg. am|or, am. am|o, abam,abo, a, ato,em, arem,are.

From Verbs in io, of the third Conjugation, cast away io from the first person of the Present Tense: as, fac|io, jac|io, fod|io, which remaining letters put to the Terminations of Verbs of the fourth Conjugation, except the Imperative Mood, Preterimperfect Tense Subjunctive, and Present tense Infinitive: as, fod|io,iebam,iam,e,ito,iam,ërem,ëre.

Rule 2.

If the Verb be of the second Conjugation, cast away eo from the Present Tense: as, doc|eo; if it be of the fourth Conjugation, cast away io from the Present tense: as, aud|io, aud|ior.

Doc|eo,ebam,ebo,e,eto,eam,erem,ere.

Aud|io,iebam,iam,i,ito,iam,irem,ire.

Rule 3.

The deseñed, or reserved letters of the preterperfect tense, are found by cutting off i from the end of the first person of the said Tense: as,

Amav|i, Leg|i. amav|i,eram,erim,isse,erem,isse.

Gerunds

Gerunds are formed from the Present tense Indicative, by putting the reserved letters to the terminations of the Gerunds.

Am	{ andi,	ando,	andum.
Doc	{ endi,	endo,	endum.
Leg	{ endi,	endo,	endum.
Aud	{ iendi,	iendo,	iendum.

A Type of the reserved Letters, with the Terminations in the Active and Passive Voice.

Let your Scholar be every day exercised in these.

F 3

Indica-

*Indicative Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	{	am	o, as, ar.
		doc	eo, es, et.
		leg	o, is, it.
		aud	io, is, it.
Plur.	{	am	amus, atis, ant.
		doc	ēmus, ētis, ent.
		leg	īmus, ītis, unt.
		aud	īmus, ītis, iunt.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	am	abam, abas, abar.
		doc	ebam, ebas, ebat.
		leg	ebam, ebas, ebat.
		aud	iebam, iebas, iebat.
Plur.	{	am	abamus, abatis, abant.
		doc	ebamus, ebatis, ebant.
		leg	ebamus, ebatis, ebant.
		aud	iebamus, iebatis, iebant.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	amav	i, isti, it. Pl. imus, istis, ērunt, or ēre.
		docu	
		leg	
		audiv	

*Preter-**Indicative Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	{	am	or, aris, or are, atur.
		doc	eor, ēris, or ēre, ētur.
		leg	or, ēris, or ēre, itur.
		aud	ior, iris, or ire, itur.
Plur.	{	am	amur, amini, antur.
		doc	ēmur, ēmini, entur.
		leg	īmur, īmini, untur.
		aud	īmur, īmini, iuntur.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	am	abar, abaris, or abare, abatur.
		doc	ēbar, ēbaris, or ebare, ebatur.
		leg	ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur.
		aud	iebar, iebaris, or iebare, iebatur.
Plur.	{	am	abamur, abamini, abantur.
		doc	ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.
		leg	ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.
		aud	iebamur, iebamini, iebantur.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	us	sum	es	est
		a	or	or	or
		um	fui	fuiſti	fuit.
		i	ſumus	etiſ	ſunt
Plur.	{	æ	or	or	or
		a	ſuimus	ſuiſtiſ	ſuerunt, or fuere.

F 4

Preter-

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Singulariter	amav	{	eram, eras, erat. eratis, erant.	Pl. eramus,
	docu			
	leg			
	audiv			

Future Tense.

Sing.	am	{	abo, abis, abit. ebo, ebis, ebit. am, es, et. iam, ies, iet.
	doc		
	leg		
	aud		
Plur.	am	{	abimus, abitis, abunt. ebimus, ebitis, ebunt. emus, etis, ent. iemus, ietis, ient.
	doc		
	leg		
	aud		

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	am	{	a,	{	et,
		{	áto.	{	áto.
	doc	{	é,	{	eat,
		{	éto.	{	éto.
	leg	{	ě,	{	at,
		{	ĭto.	{	ĭto.
	aud	{	í,	{	iat,
		{	íto.	{	íto.

Plur.

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Sing.	us	{	eram, or fueram,	{	eras, or fueras,	{	erat, or fuerat.
	a						
	um						
Plur.	i	{	eramus, or fueramus,	{	eratis, or fueratis,	{	erant, or fuerant.
	æ						
	a						

Future Tense.

Sing.	am	{	abor, aberis, or abere, abitur. ebor, eberis, or ebere, ebitur. ar, eris, or ere, etur. iar, ieris, or iere, ietur.
	doc		
	leg		
	aud		
Plur.	am	{	abimur, abimini, abuntur. ebimur, ebimini, ebuntur. emur, emini, entur. iemur, iemini, ientur.
	doc		
	leg		
	aud		

Imperetive Mood.

Sing.	am	{	are,	{	etur,
		{	ator.	{	ator.
	doc	{	ere,	{	eatur,
		{	etor.	{	etor.
	leg	{	ere,	{	atur,
		{	itor.	{	itor.
	aud	{	ire,	{	iatur,
		{	itor.	{	itor.

Plur.

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Pluraliter	{	am emus,	{	ate,	ent,
			{	atote.	amanto.
	{	doc eamus,	{	ete,	eant,
			{	etote.	ento.
	{	leg amus,	{	ite,	ant,
			{	itote.	unto.
	{	aud iamus,	{	ite,	iant,
			{	itote.	iunto.

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	{	am em, es, et.
		doc eam, eas, eat.
		leg am, as, at.
		aud iam, ias, iat.
Plur.	{	am emus, etis, ent.
		doc eamus, eatis, eant.
		leg amus, atis, ant.
		aud iamus, iatis, iant.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	am ārem, āres, āret.
		doc ērem, ēres, ēret.
		leg ěrem, ěres, ěret.
		aud ĩrem, ĩres, ĩret.
Plur.	{	am arēmus, arētis, ārent.
		doc ērēmus, ērētis, ērent.
		leg ěrēmus, ěrētis, ěrent.
		aud ĩrēmus, ĩrētis, ĩrent.

Preter-

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Pluraliter	{	am emur,	{	amini, entur.
			{	amini, antor.
	{	doc eamur,	{	eminor, eantur.
			{	eminor, entor.
	{	leg amur,	{	imini, antur
			{	iminor, untor
	{	aud iamur,	{	imini, iantur.
			{	iminor, iuntor.

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	{	am er, éris, or ère, ètur.
		doc ear, eáris, or eáre, eátur.
		leg. ár, áris, or àre, âtur.
		aud iar, iáris, or iáre, iátur.
Plur.	{	am émur, émini, éntur.
		doc eámur, eámini, eántur.
		leg àmur, ámini, ántur.
		aud iámur, iámini, iántur.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	am arer, areris, or arere, aretur.
		doc ērer, erēris, or erēre, erētur.
		leg ěrer, ěrēris, or ěrēre, erētur.
		aud ĩrer, ĩrēris, or ĩrēre, ĩrētur.
Plur.	{	am aremur, aremini, arentur.
		doc eremur, eremini, erentur.
		leg eremur, eremini, erentur.
		aud ĩremur, ĩremini, ĩrentur.

Preter-

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	amav	} ěrim. ěris, ěrit. Plur. erĭmus, erĭtis, erĭnt.
	docu	
	leg	
	audiv	

Plusquam perfect Tense.

Sing.	amav	} issem, isses, isset. Pl. issemus, issetis, issent.
	docu	
	leg	
	audiv	

Future Tense.

Sing.	amav	} ěro, ěris, ěrit. Pl. erĭmus, erĭtis, erĭnt.
	docu	
	leg	
	audiv	

Infinitive Mood Active.

Present Tense.

am	āre	} Preterper. } amav	} ěsse.
doc	ēre		
leg	ēre		
aud	ire		
		Preterplu. } docu	
		Preterim. } leg	
			audiv

Future

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	us	fim,	fis,	fit,
	a	or	or	or
	um	fuerim.	fueris.	fuerit.
Plur.	i	fimus,	fitis,	fint,
	æ	or	or	or
	a	fuerimus,	fueritis	fuerint.

Plusquam perfect Tense.

Sing.	us,	essem,	esses,	esset,
	a,	or	or	or
	um,	fuissem	fuiesses,	fuisset.
Plur.	essemus,	Esseris,	Essent,	
	or	or	or	
	fuissemus,	fuissetis,	fuisissent.	

Future Tense.

Sing.	us,	ero,	eris,	erit,
	a,	or	or	or
	um,	fuero,	fueris,	fuerit.
Plur.	erimus,	eritis,	erunt,	
	or	or	or	
	fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerunt.	

Infinitive Mood Passive.

Present Tense.

am	ari,	} Preterper. } um	} esse,
doc	eri,		
leg	i,		
aud	iri.		
		Preterimperf. } or	
		Preterpluper. } fuisse.	

*Locutus esse
dicitur ho-
mo copiosus,
aliqua ho-
ras, de im-
peratoris
officio.*

Future

Future Tense.

Amat	}	urum esse.
Doct		
Leet		
Audit		

Signs of the Infinitive.

	Active.	Passive.
Pre. tens.	that I love.	{ that I am loved.
Pre. tens.	that I have loved.	
	that I had loved.	
	that I did love.	
		{ that I have been loved.
		{ that I had been loved.
		{ that I was loved.

Obfer-

Future Tense.

Amat		um, iri,	{	am	andum	}	esse.		
Doc				doc				endum	
Leet				or				leg	endum
Audit				aud				iendum	

Signes of the Future:

Active.	Passive.
that I might love.	{ that I might be loved.
that I would love.	
that I should love.	
that I will love.	
	{ that I would be loved.
	{ that I should be loved.
	{ that I will be loved.

Obfer-

Observations.

I. Amaturum fuisse, doth differ from amaturum esse, as followeth:

1. Amaturum fuisse, signifieth the time past: as, dixit aliam puellam se amaturum fuisse, hee said, he would have loved another maid; ejusmodi igitur credo res Panetium profecuturum fuisse. Such matters therefore I believe Panetius would have treated of.

2. Amaturum esse, signifieth the simple Future Tense, or time to come; dicis te esse amaturum, thou sayest, that thou wilt love.

II. If a Verb want its Supines, and consequently the future in rus, then Gram-
 Peripbra- marians speak about by spero and fore: as, spero fore ut contingat id nobis, I
 is. hope that it will happen to us: which Circum-
 Spero me locution takes place also when the Verbs are
 ac conse- perfect: as, spero fore ut me ames. I
 turum, for hope that thou wilt love me.
 onfeturum
 se.

III. In stead of the Future Tense Indica-
 tives. tive, Future Subjunctive, and Preterimper-
 fect Tense Subjunctive, you may use the Par-
 ticiples in rus with the Verb Sum.

1. Ego amaturus sum, I shall love.
2. Cum amaturus sim, when I shall love.
3. Cum amaturus essem, when I would love.

IV. The Future Tenses Passive, amatum iri, and amandum esse, differ as follow-
 eth:

1. Amandum esse, signifieth necessity: as,
 Et

Et dirâ bellum cum gente gerendum, and that war must be waged with a fierce nation.

2. Amandum esse, signifieth office: as, admonendum potius te à me quam rogandum puto. I think thou oughtest rather to be admonished then intreated of me.

3. Amandum is declined and must agree in Case, Gender, and Number, with the Substantive on which it doth depend.

But amatum iri, simply noteth the time to come, and is not varied in Gender, and Number: as, cum interea rumor venit datum iri gladiatores; when in the mean while there was a rumour that Fencers were promised or should be given: spero omnia à te confossum iri.

V. Amatum ire, hath the signification of the Present Tense Indic. in the active voice: Amatum
 as, amatum ire, to love, with endeavour to ire signifi-
 obtain: as, Siccine oportet ire amicos ho- cat in viâ
 mini amanti operam datum? i.e. dare, doth esse ad a-
 it so behove friends to help or aid a man that is mandum,
 a Lover? scio te ama-
 tum ire, i.e.
 amatum.

VI. Amatum fore, hath the compleat signification of Future Tense Passive in the Infinitive Mood: as, Spero amicitiam nostram notam posteritati fore. I hope our friendship will be known to posterity.

VII. Future Tenses Infinitive are some- times joyned to Futures: as, deinde addit
 Danes. te ad me fore venturum.

VIII. Amaturum, occisurum, dicturum, Despanter
 and in fol.

Of Verbs Impersonals.

and the *Future Tenses* in *rum*, amongst old Authors are used invariable, but without esse: as, quocunque venerint hanc sibi rem praesidio sperant futurum, for futuram esse.

Verbs Impersonals.

There are certain Verbs deficient in Person, which are called Impersonals.

Impersonals be declined throughout all Moods and Tenses in the voice of the third person singular only: as, delectat, it delighteth; delectabat, it did delight: delectavit, it hath delighted; delectaverat, it had delighted; delectabit, it shall or will delight. Imper. delectet, let it delight, &c. i-tur, I go: ibatur, I did go: itum est, I have gone: or, itum fuit, I have gone: itum erat, I had gone: or, itum fuerat, I had gone: ibitur, I shall or will go, &c.

And they have commonly before the English this sign (*it*:) as, it delighteth, delectat: it becommeth not, non decet.

Observations.

1. It before a Verb is a sign of a Nominative case after the Verb: as, it is he, ille est.

2. It before a Verb, is also a sign of an Infinitive Mood, or sentence put in stead of the Nominative case: as, Turpe est aliorum incumbere famæ. It is a shameful thing to depend upon another mans fame.

3. A Nominative case in the English before

Of a Participle.

before a Verb Impersonal, shall be such case as the Verb Impersonal will govern; for, I must, sap, me oportet, it behoveth me; and for we often repent us of our lost time, it repenteth us often of our lost time.

Of a Participle.

There are four kinds of Participles:

1. A Participle of the Present Tense hath his English ending in *ing*: as, loving, and his Latine in *ans*: as, amans: in *ens*, as, legens, docens: in *iens*, as, audiens.

And it hath the signification Active or Neuter, as the Verb whereof it cometh.

And it is formed of the Preterimperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, by changing the last syllable into *ns*: as, amabam, amans: poteram, potens.

A word ending in *ing*, is a Participle of the Present Tense, when it hath a person or substantive before it, answering to the Question *who*, or *what*: as, offendi adveniens, I coming, have offended: manus scribentis, the hand of one writing.

Iens, the Participle of *eo*, and the compounds thereof, make the oblique cases, eun-tis, eunti, euntem, eunte, and the Gerunds eundi, eundo, eundum, only ambiens, mambeth ambientis, ambienti, ambientem, &c. like audiens.

2. A

2. *A Participle of the Preter Tense.*

A Participle of the Preter Tense hath his English ending in d: as, loved; in t: as, taught; in n: as, slain; and his Latin in tus: as, amatus: in sus: as, victus: in xus, as, nexus: and one in uus: as, mortuus. And it hath the signification of the Passive or Deponent, of which it cometh; Participles of Deponents having their English also ending in ing: as, sequutus, following, or having followed.

It is formed of the latter Supine by putting to s: as, of amatu, amatus.

Observations.

1. When the Tenses of Verbs are Englished in d, t, or n, as the Participle of the Preter Tense, they have some person, substantive, or sign of the Tense before them: as, he loved, he hath loved.

2. When the English of the Participle of the Present Tense should govern a Substantive after it, it may better be made by the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense, put absolute with that Substantive: as, he sending his man, informed me, misso famulo me docuit.

3. Having coming before the English of this Participle, if the Participle come of a Verb Deponent, it is made in Latin by this Participle, governing the Substantive following: as, Having spoken these words he went away: Loquutus

rus hæc verba abiit. But if the Participle come of a Verb Passive, then it is put in the Ablative case absolute: as, his verbis dictis, or made by the Subjunctive Mood, with cum, when: as, cum hæc verba dixisset, when he had spoken these words.

4. Being is a sign of this Participle: as, being weary, defessus.

3. *A Participle of the Future in rus.*

A Participle of the future in rus, is Englished with to, like the Infinitive Mood of the Verb Active: as,

1. To doe.
2. About to doe.
3. Ready to doe.
4. Like to doe.
5. Upon the point to doe.

Ruiturus, Upon the point to fall.

And it hath the signification of the Active or Neuter, wheresof it cometh; and it is formed of the latter Supine by putting to rus: as, of amatu, amaturus.

4. *A Participle of the Future in dus.*

A Participle of the future in dus, is Englished with to be, like the Infinitive Mood Passive: as,

1. To

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 To be. | } Plectendus esset, hee | |
| 2 Must be. | | should have been pu- |
| 3 Fit to be. | } Laudandus est, hee | |
| 4 Should be. | | deserves to bee prai- |
| 5 Ought to be. | | sed. |
| 6 Deserves to be. | | |

And hath always the passive signification, and is readily formed from the Gerund in dum, by changing dum into dus: as, amandum, amandus.

Participles of the Present Tense are declined like *foelix*. Participles of other Tenses, are declined like *bonus*.

A Participle is a word derived of a Verb, from which it hath signification of time, and is declined with Cases and Genders like a Noun,

Observations.

1. *Cano, cresco, soleo, obliviscor*, have the Supines, and want the Participle of the future in *rus*.

2. *Osurus* is of *odi*, *moriturus*, of *morior*, which want the Supines.

3. *Pariturus, nosciturus, sonaturus, arguiturus, eruiturus, oriturus*, are formed irregularly.

4. Innumerable words like Participles are derived of Nouns: *tunicatus, togatus, personatus, larvatus*.

5. *Carendus, pudendus, pigendus, Vigilandus, regnandus*, come of Verbs Nouns.

An

An Adverb.

Adverb is a word undeclined, joined to a Verb, Noun, or Participle, to express some circumstance or quality.

1. Adverbia affirmandi.

Adverbs of affirming: *as, etiam, yea; etiam, atque etiam, diligently, earnestly; etiamdum, as yet; etiamne, therefore; etiamnum, yet, until then; etiam nunc, even now; etiam tum, even then; sic, so; ita, yea so, even so; sane, yea certainly, doubtlesse; maximè, most of all, very greatly, very much; omnino, wholly altogether; omnino non, never, not at all; prorsus, verily, surely; rursus prorsus, to and fro, forward and backward; certè, certainly, surely, without doubt; profectò, in very deed, forsooth, doubtless; planè, clearly, without doubt; planè manè, very early; imò, but rather, yea rather.*

2. Adverbia comparandi.

Adverbs of comparing.

Tam, so, or aswell: quam, as: magis, more: minus, lesse: maxime, especially.

3. Adverbia congregandi.

Adverbs of gathering together.

Simul, together: unà, together; pariter, together: universim, generally, altogether: conjunctim, together.

4 Ad-

4. Adverbia corrigendi, eligendi,
or præferendi.

Adverbs of correcting, choosing, or preferring.

Imo, yea rather : potius, rather : magis,
rather : satius, better : potissimum, rather, or
chiefly.

5. Adverbia demonstrandi.

*Adverbs of shewing : æ, en, behold :
ecce, behold.*

6. Adverbia distribuendi.

Adverbs of dividing in sundry parts.

Bifariam, after two sorts, in two parts : tri-
fariam, three manner of ways : dupliciter,
two ways : tripliciter, three fold.

7. Adverbia diversitatis.

*Adverbs of contrariety, difference, or un-
likeness.*

Aliter, otherwise, after another fashion :
secus, otherwise.

8. Adverbia dubitandi.

Adverbs of doubting.

Forſan, peradventure : forſitan, peradven-
ture : fortassis, it may be, or peradventure : an,
whether or no : num, whether or no.

9. Adverbia excludendi.

Adverbs of shutting out, or debarring.

Tantum, only : solum, only, alone : dunta-
xat, only : unicè, only.

10. Adver-

10. Adverbia hortandi.

Adverbs of exhorting.

Amabo, of fellowship of all love, or I pray
thee, as ever thou wilt do me a good turn : age-
dum, well, go to : eia, go to.

11. Adverbia intendendi.

Adverbs of increasing.

Valde, very much, greatly : nimis, too much,
very much, over-much : nimium, too far, too
greatly : immodicè, too much, excessively :
impendio, very much, more and more.

Impensè, exceedingly, very much : penitus,
deeply, far in : funditus, from the foundation
or ground.

12. Adverbia interrogandi.

Adverbs of asking.

Of which some ask,

1. Whether the thing be : as, num, whe-
ther ? an, whether ?

2. Others ask concerning the cause : as,
cur, wherefore ?

3. Others ask concerning the place : as,
ubi, where ? unde, from whence ?

4. Others ask concerning the time : as,
quando, when ? quoad, how long ? quous-
que, how long ? quamdiu, how long ?

5. Others ask concerning the number :
quoties, how many times ? how often ?

6. Others ask concerning the quality :
as, qualiter, how ?

7. Others ask concerning the intention
or increasing : as, quàm, how greatly ? how
much ?

13. Adverbia jurandi.

Adverbs of swearing: *as*,

Hercule, by Hercules, or truly: *me* Hercule, as Hercules shall help me: *Pol*, in good sooth, or by Pollux: *Ædepol*, by the Temple of Pollux: *næ*, truly, or now in good faith.

14. Adverbia loci.

Adverbs of place.

1. From a place, by which we answer to unde, from whence? *hinc*, from hence: *illinc*, from thence: *istinc*, from thence: *intus*, from within: *foris*, from without: *inde*, from that place: *aliunde*, from some other place: *alicundè*, from some place: *indidem*, from thence, from the same place: *undecunque*, from what place soever: *supernè*, from above: *infernè*, from below, or beneath: *cœlitus*, from heaven.

2. To a place: by which we answer to quo? whither? or to what place? *huc*, hither, where I am, or to this place: *illuc*, thither, or to that place: *istuc*, thither: *intrò*, into a place within: *foras*, out of doors, abroad: *fursum*, upward: *deorsum*, downward.

3. In a place: by which we answer to the question ubi? wherein, or in what place? *hic*, here, *illic*, there: *istic*, there: *intus*, within: *foris*, without: *usquam*, in any place, *nusquam*, in no place: *uspiam*, in any place: *ubique*, in all places: *ubicunque*, in what place soever: *utrinque*, on both sides: *ibi*, in that place: *alibi*, in another place, or in another matter: *alicubi*, in any place: *ibidem*, in the same place, or in the same thing.

4. Towards a place: by which we answer to the

the question quorsum? which way, or towards what place? *horsum*, hitherward: *aliorsum*, to some other place: *dextrorsum*, towards the right hand: *sinistrorsum*, on or toward the left side or hand: *introrsum*, within, in the inward part: *extrorsum*, toward the outward part.

15. Adverbia negandi.

Adverbs of denying.

Haud, not: *non*, not: *minime*, no: *nequaquam*, no, or in no wise.

16. Adverbia negatæ solitudinis.

Adverbs of solitariness, or aloneness denied.

Non modò, not only: *non solum*, not only: *non tantum*, not only.

17. Adverbia numeri.

Adverbs of number.

Semel, once: *bis*, twice: *ter*, thrice: *quater*, four times: *quingies*, five times: *sexies*, six times: *septies*, seven times: *vigesies*, or *vicies*, twenty times: *trigesies*, or *tricies*, thirty times: *quadragies*, forty times: *quingagies*, fifty times.

18. Adverbia optandi.

Adverbs of wishing.

Utinam, I would to God, or God grant: *ô*, O that.

19. Adverbia Ordinis.

Adverbs of order.

Imprimis, first of all: *inde*, then, next after: *deinde*, secondly, moreover, or furthermore:

novissimè, *finally* : denique, *in conclusion*, or *finally*.

20. Adverbia rei non peractæ.

Adverbs of a thing not finished.

Fermè, *almost*, well *nigh* : fere, *almost* : prope, *nigh* : propemodum, *almost* : vix, *scarcely* : modo non, *almost* : tantum non, *almost*.

21. Adverbia prohibendi.

Adverbs of forbidding : as,

Ne, *no* : nequaquam, *no* : minimè, *no*.

22. Adverbia qualitatis.

Adverbs of quality : as,

Doctè, *learnedly* : pulchrè, *goodly*, or *gaily* : fortiter, *valiantly* : gnaviter, *lustily*, *diligently*.

23. Adverbia quantitatis.

Adverbs of quantity : as,

Parùm, *little* : satis, *as much as one doth need* : abundè *plenteously*.

24. Adverbia remittendi.

Adverbs of abating or slackning : as,

Vix, *scantely*, or *scarcely* : ægrè, *hardly* : paulatim, *by little and little* : sensim, *leisurely* : peditentim, *at leisure*, *softly* and *fair*.

25. Adverbia restringendi.

Adverbs of restraining, or keeping in : as,

Quatenus, *so far as*, or *how far forth* : quod, *as to that*, or *as touching that*.

26. Ad-

26. Adverbia segregandi.

Adverbs of severing, or laying apart : as,

Scorsim, *asunder* : segregatim, *asunder* : nominatim, *particularly by name* : viritim, *man by man* : oppidatim, *town by town* : vica-tim, *street by street* : ostiatim, *door by door*.

27. Adverbia similitudinis.

Adverbs of likeness : as,

Sic, *so* : sicut, *like as* : ita, *so* : tanquam, *even as* : quasi, *as* : ceu, *as* : uti, *as* : veluti, *as*.

28. Adverbia temporis.

Adverbs of time : as,

1. Of the Present Tense : as, jam, *now* : nunc, *now* : hodiè, *to day*.

2. Of the Preterperfect Tense : as, heri, *yesterday*.

3. Of the Future Tense : as, cras, *to morrow* : perendiè, *the day after* : mox, *anon*, *forthwith* : propediem, *now, every day*, *shortly*.

4. Of time indefinite, or not determined : as, dum, *when, or whiles* : quum, *when* : quando, *when* : quamdiu, *how long*, *as long as* : subinde, *forthwith*, or *anon*.

5. Of the Present and Future Tense, olim, *in time past, or in time to come* : aliquando, *in time past, or in time to come* : quondam, *in time past, or in time to come*.

Observations.

1. There before a person, or substantive, or before It, is an Adverb of place : as, ibidem, *there* : eo loci, *there (i.e.) in that place* : there he was eò erat loci, *there men gather fruit*, *there it is*.

G 3

2. There

Of a Conjunction.

2. *There before a Verb, is a sign of the Nominative case after the Verb; there came one to me, venit ad me quidam.*

3. *There before is, in the beginning of a speech, is but a void word with the Latines: as, There is no enemy like to a flattering friend; nullus inimicus est adulanti amico inimitior.*

Adverbs have the Comparative and Superlative degree: as, doctè, learnedly; doctius, more learnedly; doctissime, most learnedly; benè, well; melius, better; optime, best; male, evil; pejus, worse; pessime, worst; magis, more; maximè, most.

A Conjunction:

A Conjunction joineth words and sentences together.

1. Conjunctiones casuales.

Which bring in a reason of the sentence or thing going before.

Nam, for: namque, for: enim, for: etenim, for: ut, that: quod, that: quia, because: quippe, for: quum, sith that: quoniam, because: quando, sith that, or because.

2. Conjunctiones concessivæ.

Which grant something in a sentence, to which something afterwards is joined, which impugneeth it by a Redditive, as not hindring the main thing by so granting.

Conces-

A Conjunction.

Concessive.

*Etsi, although.
Tametsi, although.
Etiamsi, although.
Quamquam, although.
Quamvis, although.
Esto, be it so.*

Redditive.

*Tamen, yet notwithstanding.
Attamen, yet notwithstanding.
Veruntamen, yet nevertheless.*

3. Conjunctiones conditionales.

Which determine the sentence following upon some condition: as, si, if: sin, but if: siquidem, if for truth: modò, so that: dum, so that: dummodo, so that: quoad, so far, as much as: quatenus, so far, as much as: alioqui, except that, if not: alias, or else.

4. Conjunctiones continuativæ.

Which without intermission do orderly continue the parts of an Oracion amongst themselves: as, deinde, moreover: porrò, moreover: præterea, furthermore: itemque, and moreover: insuper, moreover.

5. Conjunctiones copulativæ.

Which couple words and sense: &, and: ac, and: que, and: atque, and: cum, both: tum, and also.

6. Conjunctiones disjunctivæ.

Which sever parts of sentences, as if one

one onely could be true. They conjoin words and disjoin sense: aut, or, or either: ve, or, either: seu, either: five, either.

7. Diminutivæ.

Which judge that which is lesse worthy to be granted: as, saltem, at least: minimum, at the least: vel, yea, or at least wise:

8. Discretivæ.

Which lightlp sever parts, or join together things severed: as, sed, but: at, but: quidem, but truly: autem, but: verò, but: at, but: atque, but: cæterum, but: tamen, yet.

9. Electivæ.

By which of two things set before us, we shew that we choose and prefer the former: as, quàm, then as: ac, than: atque, than.

10. Exceptivæ.

Which except something from the sentence going before: as, nisi, except: præterquam, except: ni, except: quin, nay, for all that: alioquin, except that.

11. Explanativæ.

Which explains things going before: as, seu, as it were: scilicet, as who say: nempe, to wit: nimirum, to wit.

12. Expletivæ, or Completivæ.

Which are inserted into the Orat[i]on for ornament or filling sake onely: at enim non finam, but I will not suffer it.

13. Illa-

13. Illativæ.

Which are also called Rationales, Ratiocinativæ, & Conclusivæ; which from Antecedents do infer a Conclusion: ergo, therefore: ideo, therefore: igitur, therefore: itaque, therefore.

Observations.

1. Cum, when, is an Adverb of time: Cum, both, is a Conjunction Copulative: Cum, seeing that, is a Conjunction Casual.

Hermes.

But,

1. But, i. e. only, is made by tantum, or modo, or solum.

2. But, i. e. but that, by quin, or qui, quæ, quod, and non, or ut non.

3. But, i. e. not but, by non or quin.

4. But, i. e. except by, præter or nisi.

Quam.

1. Quàm is often understood after plus, minus, amplius.

Amplius Centum, for quam centum, above an hundred.

2. Quàm, is sometimes put for antequam or postquam: as, quadringentesimo anno quàm urbs Roma condita erat, the four hundredth yeare after the City Rome was built.

3. Quam is put for postquam, after alter: as, alterâ die quàm, the next day after, &c.

4. Quam is put for postquam, when protinus or statim go before: as, statim quàm urbem ingressi, incontinently, or by and by after that they entred the City.

G. 5.

5. Quam

5. Quàm, is put for postquam, after pridie, and postridie: as, postridiè intellexi quam à vobis discessi, I understood it the day after that I departed from you.

6. Quam, for: quantum, how, or as, is joyned to Possessives: quam sint morosi, how wayward or froward they are: homo non quam isti sunt gloriosus, a man not so glorious as these are.

7. Quam, as, is joyned to Superlatives, if possum, volo, or queo, come between quam and the degree: as, quam possunt mollissimè, as gently or diligently as they can: quam occultissimè, as closely as they may.

8. Quàm, as, is sometimes joyned to a Superlative with tam or ità: as, quàm quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, he that did worst, sped best.

9. Quàm, very, is elegantly joyned to Superlatives: ut esset apud te ob hoc quàm gratissimus; that he might be for this very acceptable, or in very great favour with you.

10. Quam with valdè, is joyned to Possessives, and englished very: as, suos valdè quàm paucos habet, he hath very few of his own: and sometimes to Possessives: as, scribit ad me quàm honorificè, he writeth unto me very honourably.

11. Tam in a sentence is elegantly set before quàm: tam te diligo quàm meipsum, I love thee as well as my self.

12. Quàm elegantly knits two Comparatives: as, triumphus clarior, quam gratior fuit, the triumph was more famous, then accepted.

13. Quàm

13. Quàm with volo, is put for tantum quantum, as much as: as, cum volo turbent porro quam velint, when I will, they can disturb as much as they will.

14. Adè, perindè, benè, and ità, are elegantly Englished very: as, habebis Orationem benè longam; you shall have a very long Oration.

15. Nedum, much lesse, is put in the latter part of the sentence, and in Negatives it joyneth the greater to the foregoing lesser: as, vile nè captare quidem nedum alere conducet; it is profitable not indeed to catch, much lesse to nourish that which is of no value or account: but in Affirmatives it joyneth the lesse to the greater, that went before. Satrapas si sit amator nunquam sufferre ejus sumptus queat nedum tu possis.

16. Nedum, Englished not onely, is put in the former and latter clause: as, nedum hominum humilium ut nos sumus, sed etiam amplissimorum virorum consilia probare solent. Movere hic casus quemlibet possit nedum hominem patriæ suæ amantissimum.

Etenim, enim, quidem, quoque, autem, vero, are placed in the second place of pour speech: also inquam, inquit, equidem, hercle, proculdubio, igitur, que, unquam.

Of

A Præposition.

A Præposition is set before other words:
 1. In Composition.
 2. In Government of case.

Præpositions serving to the
Accusative case.

ad, to : at, until.	per, by or through.
quoad, as touching.	pone, behind.
apud, at, with, before.	post, after, behind.
ante, before.	præter, beside, except.
adversus, } against,	propter, for, or near
adversum } towards.	by.
cis, on this side.	secundum, according
citra, on this side, with-	to, near, next to.
out.	secus, by.
circum } about.	supra, above, beyond.
circa, }	trans, over, on the o-
circiter, }	ther side.
contra, against, over a-	versus, towards.
gainst.	ultra, beyond.
erga, towards.	infra, beneath.
extra, without, be-	juxta, beside, or nigh
sides.	to.
inter, between, among,	ob, for, before.
amidst.	penes, in the power,
intra, within.	with.

Præpositi-

Præpositions serving to the Ab-
lative case.

à, from, of, by, since,	præ, before, or in com-
after, for, or on our	parison, for, or by
side.	reason of.
ab, or abs, from, of, by.	pro, for, before, out of,
absque, without.	or after.
coram, before.	sine, without.
cum, with.	
de, of, concerning, out	
of, by, about.	
e, * ex, of, out of, ever	* nihil ex occulto,
since.	nihil ex insidiis
	agendum, Cic.

If *procul*, or *simul*, be joyned with an Ablative case, *à*, or *cum*, is understood before the Ablative: as, *procul patriâ*, for *à patriâ*, far from his country: *à* and *ex*, before words beginning with a vowel, and *j*, *l*, *abs*, before words beginning with *t*, and *q*: as, *abs te*.

Præpositions serving to the Accu-
sative and Ablative case.

In, signifying in, or among, requires an ablative case usually: *fuit mihi in mentem*, it was in my mind.

In, signifying into, for, towards, upon, against, requireth an accusative case.

Sub, signifying towards, about, a little before, or after, requireth an accusative case: and also after verbs of moving: *missus*
 sub

Of a Præposition.

sub jugum, brought into subjection.

Sub, signifying under, requirerh an ablative case, and sometimes about: as, sub exitu vitæ, about the time of his death.

Super, signifying concerning, requirerh an ablative case.

Super, signifying beyond, requirerh an accusative case.

Subter, under, requirerh an accusative, or ablative case.

Clam, unknown to, requirerh an accusative, or ablative case.

Tenus, nigh to, or up to, governs an ablative case, both singular or plural, unless the word to be governed of tenus, want the singular number, or signifie things two in nature: as, crurum tenus, up to the ankles: aurium tenus, up to the ears: nutricum tenus, nigh to the paps: and, lumborum tenus, for then it is a genitive.

Observations.

1. Apud is set before the place: as, quid apud hæc ædes negotii est tibi? what business hast thou at this house?

2. Apud, is not used after Verbs of motion.

3. Apud, signifying by, of, to, before, is set before the person: as, apud te, before thee: apud majores nostros, by our ancestors.

4. Ante, is referred to { time,
persons,
places.

5. Cis, for the most part is set before
Moun-

Of a Præposition.

Mountains and Rivers; also, cis paucos dies, within a few days.

6. Citra is used before persons, time, and other Substantives.

7. Circiter is set before time and number, but seldom before place.

8. Circa, is set before time, place, and persons, seldom before number.

9. Extra, is set before persons and substantives of things material and not material: extra muros, without the walls: extra periculum, without danger.

Signes.

1. A sign is a void word in the Latine, or a word for which no Latine is allotted; yet noting some Case, Mood, or Tense, &c.

2. Præpositions are then set before cases when they are not signes of cases; and they are signes of cases, when by the Rules of Syntax, a word governeth a case, without a Præposition.

3. Cum is seldom expressed, but when it signifieth society: venit cum sociis, hee came with his companions.

4. Præpositions set without cases after them, become Adverbs.

5. For, when it is made by the Conjunctions casual, nam, enim, &c. it hath ordinarily a nominative case and the verb, or a verb joined with an Adverb or Relative, immediately following: as,

Non enim sumus ii quorum vagetur animus errore, for wee are not they whose mind wandreth in error; nam cum in omnibus quæ

quæ aguntur, for when as in all things that are done.

For, when it is a Preposition, it is immediately before a Noun or a Pronoun Substantive: as, Pueri inter se quàm pro levibus noxis iras gerunt.

Interjection:

An Interjection is a word expressing some affection of the mind.

1. Some be exultantis, of mirth: as, e-vax, hey; vah, heyday.
2. Dolentis, of sorrow: as, heu, alas; hei, ah, alas; hoi, alas; cheu, alas, ah, alas.
3. Exclamantis, of crying out: as, oh, and proh! ô.
4. Admirantis, of marvelling: as, pape, O marvellous, or strange!
5. Timentis, of fearing: as, atat, oh, or out alas.
6. Laudantis, of praising: as, euge, O wel done! eja, go to.
7. Vitantis, of shunning: as, apage, get thee gone, or fie away.
8. Vocantis, of calling, as, O, cho, heus, hoe.
9. Deridentis, of scorning: as, hui, hoe, alas.
10. Ridentis, of laughing: as, ha, ha, he.
11. Fastidientis, of disdain: as, Phuy.
12. Indignantis, vah, ah.

13. Mi-

13. Minantis, of threatening: as, vœ, wo.
14. Silentium injungentis, of injoyning silence: as, aé, au, ft. pax.

Observations:

Sometimes Nouns and Verbs are used as Interjections to expresse some affection of the mind: as, Infandum, ô horrible chance not to be mentioned.

Malum, ô the foul ill, or a mischief take him.

Mirabile dicta, quæso, fodes, sis, for sisvis; sultis, for si vultis, &c.

Finis Libri primi.



THE SECOND BOOK.

Grammar is an
art of speaking
rightly.

There be two parts
of Grammar :

1. Etymology.
2. Syntax.

Etymologie conside-
reth the properties of
every word by it self.

Syntax is the right
ordering, or putting to-
gether of words a-
mongst themselves, ac-
cording to the use of
most approved Au-
thors.

Grammatica est
ars rectè lo-
quendi.

Grammaticæ duæ
sunt partes.

1. Etymologia.
2. Syntaxis.

Etymologia vo-
cum singularum pro-
prietates considerat.

Syntaxis est recta
vorum inter se com-
positio, juxta usum
Autorum probatissi-
morum.

Rules

Rules shewing the Order, wherein
words are to be taken in
Construing.

First, the *Vocative case* (if there be any)
is to be taken, and whatsoever de-
pends of it.

Secondly, the *Nominative case* to the
Verb, or whatsoever stands instead there-
of, and that which depends of it : but if
the Verb be an *Impersonal*, then there
is no *Nominative case*.

Thirdly, the *Principal Verb* with his *In-*
finite Mood, or in stead thereof a *Ge-*
rund or *Supine*.

There is no sentence without a *Verb*,
either expressed or understood, unless when
an *Interjection* supplies the place
thereof.

Fourthly, that case which the *Verb* pro-
perly governeth, and then the other cases
are to be taken in order.

When this Order is to be changed.

First, this Order is changed in the ob-
lique cases of the *Relative Qui*, and of *In-*
terrogatives, *Indefinites*, and *Partitives*, which
together with their *Substantives*, (if they
have any expressed, are commonly to be
taken before the *Verb*, or other word
whereof they are governed.

Secondly, *Conjunctions* are usually taken
first

first in *Construction*, and *Adverbs* are taken either before, or after their Verb, as the *Tense* requires: Except *Adverbs* of likeness, as, *quemadmodum, sicut, &c.* having sic or ita, answering to them in the second part of the sentence, which are taken first.

Thirdly, *Interjections* also governing a *Vocative*, or other case, are to be construed in the first place together with their case.

Fourthly, *Prepositions* must be taken, together with their case.

Fifthly, the *Adjective* is always to be taken with his *Substantive*, unless when it doth passe the signification into another word.

Sixthly, such words as are wanting to make up full construction, are to be supplied by the sense of the place.

Seventhly, *Latine phrases*, which cannot fitly be disjoyned, are to be taken together, and to be expressed as neer as can be, to the life, that the elegance of them be not lost.

Eighthly, and lastly, when by these rules a piece of *Latine* is to be expounded, the sentence is plainly, and distinctly to be read to a full point, and the points, as *Commaes*, *Colons*, *Interrogations*, &c. are to be marked.

Points

Points by which sentences are distinguished and noted, are seven.

There are seven Points distinguishing sentences.

- | | | | | |
|------------------|---|---|----------------|-----|
| 1. Comma | : | } | 6. Exclamation | } ! |
| 2. Colon | : | | Admiration | |
| 3. Semicolon | ; | | Deploration | |
| 4. Period | . | | 7. Parenthesis | |
| 5. Interrogation | ? | | | |

Their use.

I. A *Comma*, is the note of a breathing place, so that the breath being taken, that which followeth, must presently be read.

II. A *Semicolon* sheweth a larger breathing place, then the *Comma*: and is used,

1. In contrarieties: as, not in life; but in death; not in health; but in sickness, &c.

2. In disjoyned sentences: as, aliud clausum pectore; aliud promptum in lingua habere. The one defends us against the stroke of the Law; the other against the mutability of fortune.

III. A *Period* is used, when the whole sentence is perfected; and after it, followeth a great letter.

IV. An *Interrogative point* is used when a question is asked: as, who cometh?

V. An *Exclamation* is used,

1. In calling out: as, ô most childish follies!

2. In

2. In wondering at : as, by living under Pharaoh, how quickly Joseph learned the Courtship of an Oath ! miserable brevity ! more miserable incertainty of life !

3. In bewailing : as, Pitiful ! that we should rather mischief our selves, then be content to be unpisided : en quo discordia cives perduxit miseros ! en quis consecimus agros !

4. In wishing : as, ô that I had the wings of a Dove !

VI. Colon, noteth a perfect part of branch of a sentence : the whole sentence being not yet finished : as, ut agri non omnes frugiferi sunt, qui coluntur : sic animi non omnes culti, fructum ferunt.

VII. Parenthesis, encloseth words, without which, notwithstanding the sense is perfect : as, Though the Heathen (in many places) tempted and adored their drunken God.

¶ Parenthesis is to be construed by it self.

Of the Gender of Nouns Substantives, gathered from their signification.

Rule 1.

Thou mayest call proper names, which are applyed to Hees, masculines.

Propria quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas.

Names

Names of Rivers, Fluviorum, Men- Rule 2.
Moneths, and Windes, sium & ventorum
are Masculine. nomina sunt masculina.

These Observations are to be read perfectly : also the rest upon any other Rule.

Observations.

I. Under the names of hees, are comprehended, 1. Heathen Gods : as, Mars, Pan. 2. The names of Angels : as, Raphael, Gabiel. 3. Gentiles : as, an English man, a Scotch man, a french men, &c. 4. Proper and common names given to men, and hees : as, Charles, Thomas, Romulus, Remus, vir, a man, gen. viri ; prædo, a robber, gen. prædonis ; taurus, a bull, gen. tauri.

II. Of Rivers, Allia, Albula, Mætrona, Sæquana, Druentia, Vistula, Mœsella, Garumna, following the Derivation and Termination, are read fœminines. Iader, is the Neuter Gender. Nar is the Masculine and Neuter Gender. Stix, and Lethe are the fœminine gender. Ossa and Oeta, names of Mountains, by reason of mons understood, are read masculines.

III. The names of Moneths are, 1. Januarius, i. 2. Februarius, i. 3. Martius, i. 4. Aprilis. 5. Maius. 6. Junius. 7. Julius. 8. Augustus. 9. September, is. 10. October, is. 11. November, is. 12. December, is.

IV. The

4. The names of Winds; the East-wind, Eurus; the West-wind, Favonius; the North-wind, Boreas, æ; the South-wind, Austro, tri.

5. Note that proper names, and Adjectives derived of them, also the beginnings of Verses are written with great letters.

Rule 3. Proper names shewing the shee kind are applyed to the feminine Gender.

Propria foemineum referentia nomina sexum, foemineo generi tribuuntur.

Rule 4. Names of Cities, or Towns, of Countries and Islands, are foemines.

Urbium, Regionum & Insularum, nomina sunt foeminina.

Observations.

I. Under names shewing the shee kind, are comprehended the names of Heathen
1. Goddesses: as, Juno. 2. Names of women: as, Dido. 3. Such as represent the female sex: as, Nymphes, Drias, &c. Muses, Clio, &c. Graces, Euphrosyne, &c. Furies, Alecto, Megara, and Typhonne; and with these common Nouns signifying shees: as, uxor, gen. uxoris, a wife; agna, gen. agnæ, a Ewe-Lamb; Læna, æ, a Lions.

II. In names of Cities, Authors seem to have had respect to the termination, from which if they have declined urbs, regio or insula is understood.

The rules for the termination are,

1. That

1. That words ending in a and e long, are Foeminines.

2. Words ending in o and in us, especially if they descend of Greek words in *ois*, contracted of *deis*, are Masculines: as, Sulmo, Narbo, Hippos, Pontus, Abidus, Pefinus, Daphnus, Opus, Rhamnus.

Argos, is the Neuter Gender: as, *τοῖς*.

3. Words ending in as, are Masculines: as, Agragas.

4. Words in e short: as, Præneste, Cære, Nepete: also in ma: as, Zeugma; in l, as, Hispal, Suthal; in ir, as, Gedir; in ur, as, Tibur, are Neuters; but Anxur, is Masculine and Neuter.

5. Plurals in i, are Masculines: as, Gabii, Philippi; and Plurals in a, are Neuters: as, Bactra, Artaxata.

Nouns are of the Common of two Gender, which do receive both an Adjective of the Masculine and Foemine Gender, with difference of kind.

Sunt commune Rule 5. duum, quæ cum discrimine sexus, masculinum & admittunt Adjectivum & Muliebri.

Infans, tis, an Infant. Atque Parens, tis, a father or mother. Adolescens, tis, a young man, or maid. Miles, & tis, a soldier.

Hostis, is, an enemy. Vates, is, a Prophet. Affinis, is, a kinsman by marriage. Testis, is, a witness.

Patruelis, is, a cousin german; & hæres, dis, and an heir. Vindex, icis, a revenger, & judex, icis, and a Judge.

H

CON-

Conjux, jugis, a husband, or wife: antistes, titis, a Prelate: & augur, uris, a sooth-sayer: autor, toris, a Founder.

Exercise your scholar in declining these words.

Nemo, minis, no body: custos, todis, a keeper: Dux, cis, a Captain: sacerdos, otis, a Priest.

Municeps, municipis, a Citizen, or Freeman: Comes, comitis, a companion: Civis, civis, a Citizen.

Sus, suis, a Swine: Bos, bovis, an Oxe: Canis, canis, a dog or bitch.

Observation.

The meaning of this rule is, that if the word be spoken of a bee, it is masculine, but of a shee, feminine: as, affinis, a kinsman, is masculine: but affinis, a kinswoman, feminine: testis, a witness, if a man, the masculine: if a woman, the feminine.

Rule 6.

Names of Birds, Nomina, volucrum, Beasts, and Fishes, are ferarum, piscium Epicœnes. sunt Epicœna.

Observations.

1. Sometimes the sex is differenced in several words: as, taurus, a bull: vacca, a cow: juvencus, juvenca, an Heifer.

2. Sometimes to avoid doubtfulness, or uncertainty, we use masc. and foemina: as, passer foemina, a hen-sparrow, to distinguish the sex.

The

The name of a Tree Arboris est nomen Rule 7.
is feminine, as a pop- muliebre ut populus
lar tree, an alder tree. alnus.

Exception.

Oleaster, a wild Olive Tree, gen. Oleastri, is masculine.

Siler, gen. fileris, a small withy. Suber, gen. suberis, a Cork tree. Robur, gen. roboris, an Oak. Acer, gen. aceris, a Maple Tree, are Neuters.

The Gender from the Termination excepted from the signification.

You shall put a word ending in um, neuter, Um neutrum po- Rule 8.
if you except the pro- nes hominum si pro-
per names of men and pria tollas.
women.

Observations:

1. Greek words in on, are neuters: as, Ili- on, a City. Pelion, a Mountain.

2. Mancipium, a bond-man. Scortum, an harlot, or common strumpet. Jumentum, a labouring beast, are neuters by their termination, not by their signification, &c.

Pagnium, and Dynacium, names of boyes. Glycerium, Phronesium, names of women, keep the Gender according to their signification, and not their termination.

Rule 9.

A letter or other word put for a Noun is the Neuter Gender, so is a Noun undeclined: as, gummi, gum; cornu, a horn.

Litera five aliud positum pro nomine verbum, est Neutrale genus, sic invariable nomen, ut gummi, cornu.

Explication.

Et potis es
nigrum vi-
tio presige-
re theta.
Perf. Sat.
4.

1. A letter put for a Noun: as, a nd ω: nigrum theta, black or dismall theta.
2. Another word put for a Noun: i. e. words put materially, or for themselves: as, velle suum, his own velle. Aliud cras, another cras, &c.

Of the Gender of Noun Substantives known from their Declension.

Rule 1.

Nouns of the first, and fifth Declension, are of the Fœminine Gender.

Fœminei generis sunt primi, & nomina quinti flexus.

Except of the first Declension.

1. Greek Nouns ending in as: as, tiaras, gen. æ, a round ornament for the head; and in es: as, sorites, gen. soritæ, a kind of subtle argument.
2. Words derived of these, ending in a: as, cometa, gen. cometæ, a Comet, or blazing star. Planeta, gen. Planetæ, a Planet, or wandering star. Hadria, gen. Hadriæ, the Adriatick sea, which are all Masculines.

Except

Except from the First Declension:

1. Dies, a day, which is Masculine and Fœminine in the singular number, and Masculine only in the plural.
2. Meridies, mid-day, which is Masculine in the singular number, and wants the plural.

Observations upon the First Declension.

1. That many Nouns which descend of Greek Nouns of the Masculine Gender, are notwithstanding Fœminines: as, margarita, charta, cataracta, a Portcullis. Cochlea, catapulta, a sling. Gausapa, balista, casta, a Cage to sell or punish servants in, &c.
2. Compounds of Verbs: as, transfuga, parricida, advena, coelicola, &c. may be referred to the rules of signification.

Nouns which are of the Fourth, and which are of the Second Declension, are Masculines: as, fructus, fruit: fluvius, a river.

Mascula sunt flexus, quæ quarti quæque secundi: ut, fructus, fluvius.

Rule 2.

Exceptions from the second Declension.

1. Fœminines. 2. Neuters. 3. Doubtfuls.

1. Fœminines excepted.

1. Vannus, gen. Vanni, a Van. Humus, gen. Humi, the ground. Domus, a house. Alvus, gen. Alvi, a belly. Colus, i, a distaff.

H 3

2. Greek

Of the Genders of Nouns.

2. **Greek nouns changing os into us:** as, *Papirus*, paper. *Antidotus*, a preservative against venome or poison. *Costus*, a herb called *herba Mariæ*. *Diphthongus*, a Diphthong. *Byssus*, a kind of fine flax. *Abyssus*, a bottomless gulf. *Crystallus*, Crystal. *Synodus*, an Assembly. *Sapphirus*, a Saphir stone. *Eremus*, a wilderness. *Arctus*, a celestial constellation in form of a Bear. *Exodus*, a going, or departing out. *Methodus*, a ready way to doe or teach any thing. *Dialectus*, a manner of speech in any language differs from others. *Crysolithus*, a kind of Jasper shining with a golden colour quite through. *Carbasus*, fine linnen. *Hyssopus*, hyssope. *Nardus*, a plant called Spicknard. *Acomus*, a mote in the Sun. *Pharus*, a high watch-Tower. *Lecythus*, a pot of ointment. *Byblus*, a Bul-rush. *Ficus*, a Fig, and a Fig-Tree, are *fœminines*.

2. Neuters excepted:

Virus, poison. *Nominativo virus. Accusativo virus. Voc. virus.* *Pelagus*, the sea, are *Neuters*. *Vulgus*, the common people, is sometimes the masculine, and sometimes the neuter gender.

3. Doubtfuls.

Balanus, i, all kind of mast or acorns. *Rubus*, i, a great bramble, the black-berry bush. *Phaselus*, a little ship called a Galleot. *Barbitus*, a Lute, or Dulcimer. *Grossus*, a green fig, or unripe fig, are of the Doubtful gender.

Exception

Of the Genders of Nouns.

Exception from the fourth Declension.

- 1 *Fœminines*. 2 *The Common of two*.
3 *Neuters*.

1 *Fœminines*.

Manus, a hand: *tribus*, us, a tribe or ward: *Porticus*, us, a Porch, or Gallery: *acus*, us, a needle: *idus*, *iduum*, in the plural number onely, the Ides of every month.

2. Masculine and Fœminine.

Specus, a den, and *penus*, all kind of vituals, meat and drink, are the masculine and fœminine gender.

3. Neuters:

Words ending in u, In u, desinentia
are of the Neuter Gen- sunt Neutrius gene-
der undeclined in the ris, in singulari in-
singular number: us, declinabilia: ut, cor-
cornu, a horn: genu, nu, genu.
a knee.

The Third Declension.

The Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension, is known by three special Rules, drawn from the increasing, or not increasing of the genitive case singular.

Of the Genders of Nouns.

1 Parissyllabical.

The Genitive case is said not to encrease, when the syllables are equal with the syllables in the Nominative: as, Nom. caro, Gen. carnis.

2 Imparissyllabical.

The Genitive case is said to encrease, when there are more syllables in the Genitive case than in the Nominative: as, virtus, gen. virtutis.

The first special Rule

Fœminines.

Exc. I.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case: as, caro, flesh, carnis: vis, strength, might, or power: nubes, a cloud, is the Fœminine Gender.

Nomen non crescens, genitivo: ceu, caro, carnis, vis, vis, nubes, nubis, genus est mulibre.

Exceptions

1. Of Masculines.
2. Neuters.
3. Doubtfuls.

1. Masculines.

Orbis, a circle, or ring; postis, a poste; vepres, a briar, or bramble, gen. vepris;

& and, aqualis, an ewer, or laver, are Mascul.

Allo, callis, a beaten path. Caulis, a stalk or stem of an hearb. Follis, a pair of bellows. Collis, a Hillock. Menfis, a moneth. Ensis, a sword. Fustis, a club. Funis, a rope, or cable.

Mascula sunt orbis, postis, vepres, & aqualis.

Of the Gender of Nouns.

cable. Panis, bread. Sentis, a thorn. Crinis, hair. Amnis, a river. Cassis, a net or snare. Fassis, a faggot. Penis, a tail. Torris, a fire-brand. Piscis, a fish. Unguis, the nail of the Finger or Toes. Ignis, fire. Vectis, a bar or sparr of wood. Vermis, a worm. Sodalis, a companion. Axis, an Axe Tree, or Axle Tree. Murgilis, a mullet. Acināces, a Persian Sword or Spear.

Nouns ending in er, Masculina nomina Exc. 2. are Masculines; as, in er; velut, imber, imber, a smocking venter & uter. showre of rain; venter, a belly; uter, a bottle.

2. Neuters excepted.

If a Noun in e make Neutrum nomen is (in the Genitive in e, si signit is: ut, case) it is a Neuter; mare, rete. as, mare, gen. maris, the sea; rete, gen. retis, a net.

So Panāces, an hearb that hath a leaf like the leaf of a fig Tree. Nepenthes, buglosse. Hippōmānes, a venomous humour issuing from a Mare. Cacoēthes, an evil custome. Solēcōphānes, a shew of a solecism.

3. Doubtfuls excepted.

Finis, an end, and corbis, a basket, and canalis, a channel, are of the doubtful gender. Sunt dubii generis finis corbisq; canalis.

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Also, anguis, a snake : clunis, a buttock, or haunch : torques, a collar, or chain : palumbes, a wood-culver, or ring-dove, are of the masculine or feminine gender.

The second special Rule:

Feminines.

A Noun is the feminine gender, if the last syllable save one of the genitive case increasing, sound long : as, pietas, godliness : virtus, virtue, doe shew.

Nomen crescentis penultima si genitivi syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc : pietas, pietatis : virtus, virtutis, monstrant, genus est muliebre.

Exceptions of

1. Masculines. 2. Neuters. 3. Doubtfuls.

1. Masculines.

Exc. 1.

Some Nouns of one syllable are called masculines : as, * sal, salt, gen. salis : sol, the Sun, gen. solis.

Mascula dicuntur Monosyllaba nomina quædam, ut sal, sol.

Also ren, gen. renis, the kidney or reins of the back : splen, the spleen : pes, a foot, gen. pēdis : glis, a dormouse, gen. gliris : fur, a thief : gryps, a griffin : vas, gen. vādis, a surety : præ, gen. prædis, a surety : mos, gen. moris, a manner : flos, a flower : ros, the dew : mus, a mouse : dens, a tooth : seps, gen. sepis, a venomous

Of the Gender of Nouns.

mous worm, of whose stroak or biting, the flesh rotteth : mons, a mountain : pons, a bridge : grex, gen. grēgis, a flock of cattle : fons, gen. fontis, a fountain.

Also Nouns of many syllables in n, are masculines, of what sort are Lichen, gen. Lichenis, a tetter, or ring-worm : also the hearb Liverwort.

And Delphin, gen. Delphinis, a Dolphin : Also Attæ-Pæan, gen. Pæanis, a song of praise made to Apollo. *Exc. 2.* n, Polysyllaba qualia Lichen.

Nouns in o, signifying a body, are masculines : as, unio, a precious pearl : bubo, an Owle : umbo, a shield, gen. umbonis. *Mascula sunt in o, Exc. 3.* signantia corpus : ut, unio, bubo, umbo.

So Senio, the size cast of the Dice : ternio, the number of three : sermo, a word or speech.

Nouns ending in er, or, and os : as, crater, gen. crateris, a great cup : fudor, gen. fudoris, sweat : and honos, gen. honoris, honour, are masculines. *Mascula in er, or, & os : ut, crater, sudor, honosque. Exc. 4.*

So torrens, a brook : oriens, the East : Elephas, an Elephant : Magnes, the Load-stone : tapes, tapestry : lebes, a cau'dron : adamas, a Diamond : hydrops, the droppe : nicticorax,

rax, a night raven : thorax, the breast : Phoenix, gen. Phoenicis, a bird called a Phoenix : rudens, a cable of a ship : bombyx, a silk-worm : bidens, a dung fork, or forked instrument : and tridens, gen. tridentis, an instrument having three teeth.

Exc. 5.

Also the parts and
Uncia follows the
rule of the
1. Declen.

Compounds of a pound:
as, sextans, sextantis,
two ounces : quincunx, quincuncis, five
ounces : bes, bellis,
eight ounces : semissis, gen. semissis, half a
pound : triens, gen. trientis, a farthing.

Mascula sunt etiam
partes & composita
assis : ut, sextans,
quincunx, bes cum
semisse triensque.

2. Neuters excepted.

Exc. 1.

Also these Nouns of
one syllable are Neu-
ters : as, mel, honey,
gen. mellis : fel, gall,
gen. fellis.

Sunt Neutralia &
hæc Monosyllaba
nomina mel, fel.

Also lac, milk, gen. lactis : far, bread
corn : Ver, the Spring time : Cor, a heart,
gen. Cordis : æs, brasse, gen. æris : vas, a
Vessel, gen. vasis : os, a bone : gen. ossis :
os, a mouth, gen. oris : rus, the Countrey,
gen. ruris : thus, frankincense, gen. thuris :
Jus, right : gen. juris : Crus, the leg
from the knee to the ankle. Pus, snout, gen.
puris.

Exc. 2.

And Nouns of ma-
ny syllables ending in

Et in al, polysyl-
laba in arque, nomi-
al,

al, and in ar, are Neu-
ters : as, capital, gen.
capitalis, a ribbon :
laquear, a wanted roof
of a chamber, to which
halec, gen. halecis, a hering is added.

na sunt Neutra : ut,
capital, laquear,
calcar, quibus addi-
tur halec.

3. Doubtfuls excepted:

These Nouns are of
the Doubtful Gender :
perdix, a partridge :
limax, a snail : with
grus, gen. gruis, a crane.

Hæc dubii generis
sunt perdix cum
grue limax.

Also lynx, gen. lyncis, a beast like unto a
Wolf, having many spots.

* Stirps, gen. stirpis, the root or stem : ser-
pens, a serpent : scrobs, a Ditch : calx, the
heel, gen. calcis.

* A stock
or kindred
the fæmin.
Gender.

The Third special Rule.

Masculines.

If the last syllable
save one of the Ge-
nitive case encreasing,
be short : as, sanguis,
bloud, sanguinis, in
the Genitive case, that
Noun is a masculine.

Nomen, crescen-
tis penultima si Ge-
nitivi fit gravis : ut,
sanguis, Genitivo
sanguinis est mas.

Exceptions

Exceptions

1. Of *Fœminines*. 2. *Neuters*.
3. *Doubtfuls*.

1. *Fœminines*.

Exc. 1.

Let a word above two syllables ending in *do*, which gives *dis*, in the genitive case, and ending in *go*, which giveth *gis*, in the genitive case, be the *fœminine* gender: *as*, *dulcedo*, *sweetness*: *compago*, a joint.

Add to these, *grando*, hail, gen. *grandinis*: *teges*, a course blanket, or coverlet: *compes*, a pair of fetters: gen. *compedis*: *seges*, standing corn, gen. *segetis*: *arbor*, a tree, gen. *arboris*: *hyems*, winter, gen. *hyemis*: *halcyon*, the bird called the Kings Fisher: *pecus*, gen. *pecudis*, all cattel and beasts: *cassis*, gen. *cassidis*, a helmet: *cuspis*, gen. *cuspidis*, the point of a weapon: *lagopus*, gen. *lagopodis*, an hearb called Hares-foot: *findon*, gen. *findonis*, very fine linnen: *icon*, an image: *aëdon*, *aëdonis*, a Nightingale: *forfex*, gen. *forficis*, a pair of sizzars, or sheers: *carex*, gen. *caricis*, sedge: *forceps*, gen. *forcipis*, a pair of tongs: *Supellex*, gen. *supellectilis*, household-stuff: *apendix*, gen. *apendicis*, a dependance, or addition: *histris*, gen. *histricis*, a Porcupine: *coxendix*, gen. *coxendicis*, the hip: *filix*, gen. *filicis*, jearn-brake.

And

And Greek Nouns ending in *as*, *is*, and *ys*: *as*, *Lampas*, gen. *Lampadis*, a Lamp: *jaspis*, gen. *japidis*, a jasper stone, are *fœminines*: *clamys*, a short cloak.

Græcæque in *as*, Exc. 2. *is*, & *ys*, finita: ut, *Lampas*, *jaspis*, atque *chlamys* sunt *fœminina*.

2. *Neuters* excepted.

A Noun ending in *a*, signifying a thing without life: *as*, *problema*, gen. *problematis*, a hard question is the Neuter Gender.

Est neutrale genus Exc. 1. signans rem non animam, nomen in *a*, ut *problema*.

A Noun ending in *n*, is Neuter: *as*, *omen*, gen. *ominis*, fore-speaking, except *pecten*, gen. *pectinis*, a comb, masculine.

Nomen in *n* est Exc. 2. neutrum: ut, *omen* excipe *pecten* masculinum.

Nouns ending in *ar*: *as*, *jubar*, gen. *jubaris*, the sun-beam, and ending in *ur*, *as*, *jecur*, gen. *jecoris*, the liver, are Neuters, except *furfur*, bran, masculine.

Sunt neutralia Exc. 3. nomina in *ar*: ut, *jubar*, & in *ur*, ut *jecur*, excipe *furfur*, masculinum.

A Noun ending in *us*: *as*, *onus*, *oneris*, a burden: and in *put*,

Nomen in *us*: ut, Exc. 4. *onus*, & in *put*, ut *occiput* est neutrum. *as*,

Of the Gender of Nouns.

as, occiput, occipitis, the hinder part of the head is Neuter.

Exc. 5.

Cadaver, gen. cadaveris, a dead car- daver, uber, iter, fiske : uber, gen. fer. uberis, a breast or teat : iter, gen. itineris, a journey : fiser, gen. fiseris, a parsnep, are Neuters.

Also filer, gen. fileris, an Osier. Tuber, gen. Tuberis, a Tad-stool, or swelling in a mans body. Neuter, for a Tree, Fœminine, for fruit of a Tree Masculine. Verber, Gen. Verberis. Ablat. Verbere. Pluraliter Verbera, Verberum, Verberibus, a Stripe. Suber, Genitivo Suberis, Cork. Zinziber, Genitivo Zinziberis, Ginger. Laser, Genitivo Laseris, the Hearb Benjamin. Ciser, Genitivo Ciseris, an Italian Pease. Piper, Genitivo Piperis, Pepper. Papaver, Genitivo Papaveris, Poppy. Pecus, Genitivo Pecoris, Cattel. Æquor, Genitivo Æquoris, the Sea. Marmor, Genitivo Marmoris, Marble. Ador, Genitivo Adoris, Wheat.

3. Doubtfuls excepted.

These Nouns are of Incerti generis the Doubtful Gender : sunt hæc, cinis, ales, cinis, ashes, Genitivo cineris : ales, Ge. alitis, any great bird, and adeps, fat, gen. adipis.

Also

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Also Margo, Gen. Marginis, the brim of any thing. Culex, Gen. culicis, a Gnat. Cortex, gen. corticis, the bark of a Tree. Pumex, a Pumice stone. Pulvis, dust, gen. pulveris. Obex, a bault, gen. obicis. Imbrex, a gutter-tile, gen. imbricis. Silex, a flint, gen. filicis. Onyx, gen. onichis, the nail of a finger. Sardōnix, gen. Sardonichis, a stone, the upper part resembling the colour of a mans nail, are the Masculine or Fœminine Gender.

Finis Libri secundi.



THE THIRD BOOK.

Of Heteroclites, or words out of Rule.

Irregular words in the first Declension.

Rule 1. 1. **D**ica, an action or process.

Sing. { Nom. dica. } Plur. { Accus. dicas.
 { Accus. dicam. }

2. Suppetiæ, aid, or help.

Pluraliter { Nom. Suppetiæ.
 { Accus. Suppetias.

3. Inficias, to gainsay, or deny.

Plur. Accusativo Inficias.

So Accus. incitas, poverty, ad * incitas
Redactus, brought to extrem poverty.

Plural. Ablativo, Ingratiis, by con-
straint.

* Under-
stand line-
as translatio
ab ludo ubi
calculus
non ampli-
us cietur
(i.e.) mo-
vere possit.

These

Of Irregular words.

*These Nouns are sel-
dom read plurals ; fa-
ma, fame, or tidings ;
gloria, glory ; cholera,
cholera ; pituita, flegm.*

Hæc nomina raro Rule 2.
leguntur pluralia fa-
ma, gloria, cholera,
pituita.

*Names of ages, vir-
tues, and vices, are sel-
dom plurals : as, se-
necta, old age ; juven-
ta, youth ; justitia,
justice ; invidia, envy.*

Ætatum, virtutum
& vitiorum nomina,
raro sunt pluralia :
ut, senecta, juven-
ta, justitia, invidia.

*These Nouns are the
Fœminine Gender, and
plural number : antiæ,
gen. antiarum, fore-
locks : infidiæ, wily
trains.*

Hæc sunt fœminei Rule 3.
generis, numerique
secundi, antiæ, & in-
fidiæ.

Aliso tenebræ, darkness. Phaleræ, horse-
trappings. Minæ, threatenings. Excubiæ, watch
and ward. Nugæ, trifles. Nonæ, the nones of a
month. Tricæ, vain trifles. Calendæ, the Ca-
lends. Quisquilæ, the sweeping, and refuse of
things. Thermæ, baths. Cunæ, the Cradles
of infants. Diræ, cursings. Exequiæ, solemn-
ties, as Funerals, or Burials. Feriæ, holy-days.
Inferiæ, Heathenish sacrifices done to spirits.
Primitiæ, the first-fruits. Plagæ, nets. Valvæ,
folding doors. Divitiæ, riches. Literæ, lear-
ning, or an Epistle. Exuviæ, the skin, or things
put off. Clitellæ, a pannel, or pack-saddle. Vi-
giliæ, watch. Nuptiæ, marriage. Illecebræ,
an allurements. Quadrigæ, four horses drawing
in

Of Irregular words.

in a Cart. Vindicix, the assertion of liberty or freedom.

Reliquiæ, remains. Cumæ, arum, a City of Campania. Thebæ, the head City of Thebais in Ægypt, and Athenæ, Athens.

Irregular words in the second Declension.

1. Fæminines and Neuters.

Pergamus, a Towre of Troy. 2. Carbasus, fine linnen, are Fæminines in the singular number, declined like Dominus, and Neuters in the plural, declined like Regna: as,

Singulariter	Nom.	us	Pluraliter	Nom.	a
	Gen.	i		Gen.	orum
	Dat.	o		Dat.	is
	Acc.	um		Acc.	a
	Voc.	e		Voc.	a
	Abl.	o		Abl.	is

2. Masculines and Neuters.

1. Mænālus, an hill in Arcadia. 2. Dindymus, the top of Ida by Troy. 3. Ismarus, a Mountain in Thracia. 4. Tartarus, Hell. 5. Taygetus, an hill in Lacedemonia. 6. Tenarus, a Promontory in Laconia. 7. Massicus, a Mountain in Campania. 8. Avernus, a lake in Italy, are Masculines in the singular number, declined like Dominus, and Neuters in the plural, declined like regna, orum, is.

3. Mas-

Of Irregular words.

3. Masculines in the singular number, but Masculines and Neuters in the plural.

1. Locus, a place. 2. Jocus, sport, 3. Sibilus, a hissing, are Masculines in the singular number, but Masculine and Neuter in the plural, declined like Dominus, and Regnum: as,

Singulariter	Locus	Pluraliter	Loci & loca
	Loci		Locorum
	Loco		Locis
	Locum		Locos & loca.
	Loce		Loci & loca.
	Loco		Locis.

4. Neuter in the singular number, and Masculine in the plural.

Cœlum, Heaven, thus declined.

Singulariter	Cœlum	Pluraliter	Cœli
	Cœli		Cœlorum
	Cœlo		Cœlis.
	Cœlum		Cœlos
	Cœlum		Cœli
	Cœlo		Cœlis

5. Neuters in the singular number, and Fæminines in the plural.

1. Nundinum, a Fair. 2. Delicium, de-light. 3. Epulum, a Banquet. 4. *Balneum, a Bath, are Neuters, declined like Regnum in the singular, and Musæ in the plural number: as,

* Balneum

is a privat Bath; balnea, in the plural, is used for publike Baths.

Sing

Singulariter	Nundinum.	Pluraliter	Nundinæ.
	Nundini.		Nundinarum.
	Nundino.		Nundinis.
	Nundinum.		Nundinas.
	Nundinum,		Nundinæ.
	Nundino.		Nundinis.

6. Neuters in the singular number, but masculines and neuters in the plural.

1. Rastrum, a rake. 2. Frænum, a bridle.
3. Capistrum, a head-stall, in the singular number, are Neuters, Declined like Regnum; in the plural number, masculines and neuters, Declined like Dominus, and Regnum: as,

Singulariter	Rastrum.	Pluraliter	Rastri & Rastra.
	Rastri.		Rastrorum.
	Rastro.		Rastris.
	Rastrum.		Rastros & Rastra.
	Rastrum.		Rastri & Rastra.
	Rastro.		Rastris.

7. Nouns declined in the genitive case singular only.

1. Nauci, the shell or pill of a nut. 2. Ejusmodi, of the same sort. 3. Istiusmodi, of the same sort, &c. the genitive cases of is and modus, and iste and modus.

8. Nouns of the Neuter Gender in the singular number, which have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative case in the plural.

1 Hor-

1. Hordeum, Barley. 2. Forum, a Market.
3. Mulsum, Wine mingled with honey. 4. De-frutum, wine made of new wine sod, untill half be boiled away: as,

Singulariter	Hordeum.	Pluraliter	Nom. Hordea.
	Hordei.		Accus. Hordea.
	Hordeo.		Vocat. Hordea.
	Hordeum.		
	Hordeum.		
	Hordeo.		

9. Jugerum, an acre, is the Neuter Gender in the singular number, Declined like Regnum, and Neuter in the plural number of the third Declension, Declined like tempora: as,

Singulariter	Jugerum.	Pluraliter	Jugera.
	Jugeri.		Jugerum.
	Jugero.		Jugeribus.
	Jugerum.		Jugera.
	Jugerum.		Jugera.
	Jugero.		Jugeribus.

Singularia
tantum
aut raro
pluralia.

Irregular Nouns of the second Rule,
Declension, singulars only, or sel-
dome plurals.

1. Declined like Dominus.
Vesperus, the Evening. Viscus, bird-lime.
Pontus, the sea. Limus, mud. Fimus, dung.
Mundus, womens decking themselves. Humus,
the ground. Cestus, a marriage girdle.

2. De-

2. Declined like Regnum.

Coenum, dirt. Salum, the sea. Iustitium, Vacation, or out of Term. Barathrum, a place taken for Hell. Vitrum, glasse. Viscum, bird-lime. Penum, provision of Victuals. Virus, poyson. Nihilum, nothing. Senium, old age. Lethum, death. Macellum, the Shambles. Vulgus, the common people. Solium, a Throne. Pelagus, the Sea. Fœnum, Hay. Lutum, clay or dirt. Solum, the Foundation of the Earth. Callum, brawn or hardnesse of the skin by much labour. Hilum, the black spot in the top of a Bean. Fascinum, a bewitching. Ævum, Æternity.

Ruln.

These Masculines are onely read in the plural number, declined as Domini. Masculina tantum in plurali leguntur hæc.

Liberi, children. Loculi, a Bag, Purse or Coffin. Cancelli, Lattices. Codicillo, Epistles or Letters. Fori, the Hatches or top of a Ship. Fasti, a Register of things of the year. Gabii, the name of a City in Italy. Philippi, a City in Thessali.

These are only Neuters in the plural number, declined like Regna, Regnorum, Regnis. Neutra tantum pluralia sunt, hæc moenia cum tesquis præcordia lustra ferarum.

Moenia, the wals of a City. Tesqua, rough

rough places. Præcordia, the Midriffe. Lustradens, of wilde Beasts. Iusta, rights of burial. Bellaria, banqueting dishes. Compita, crosse ways. Castra, a Camp or Tent. Rostra, a Pulpit. Incunabula, the Cradle of a little child. Extæ, the inwards or intrals. Effata, Prayers. Fraga, a Strawberry. Arma, Weapons. Crepundia, trifles and gugawes for children. Flabra, a blast of winde. Repotia, drinkings or banquetings with new wedded folks, with many others.

1. Proper names of places: as, Susa, the name of a City in Persia. Artaxata, a City of Armenia. Baetra, a Province of Scythia.

2. Famous Plays: as, Pythia, Playes and Games in the honour of Apollo. Orgia, the sacrifices of Bacchus.

3. The Titles of Books: as, Georgica, Virgils Books of the Tillage of the Earth. Ethica, Books of moral Philosophy. All thus declined.

Nom. Moenia.
Gen. Moeniorum.
Dat. Moeniis.
Acc. Moenia.
Voc. Moenia.
Abl. Moeniis.

I

Irre-

Irregular Nouns in the Third Declension.

1. **F**ors, chance. Singulariter Nom. Fors. Abl. Forte.
2. Vesper, the Evening. Sing. Nom. Vesper. Abl. Vespere.
3. Spontis, of his own accord. Sing. Gen. Spontis. Abl. Sponte.
4. Impetis, of violence. Sing. Gen. Impetis. Ablat. Impete; which four want the plural number.

1. Jugeris, of an Acre. Sing. Gen. Jugeris. Ablat. Jugere. Plur. Jugera, Jugerum, Jugeribus, Jugera, Jugera, Jugeribus.
2. Verberis, of a Stripe. Sing. Gen. Verberis. Abl. Verbere. Plur. Verbera, Verberum, Verberibus, Verbera, Verbera, Verberibus.

1. Opis, help. 2. Dapis, delicate meats. 3. Sordis, uncleanness, filth, have the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative case only in the singular number, and are perfect in the plural: as,

Gen. Opis.	} Plur.	Opes.
Acc. Opem.		Opum.
		Opibus.
Abl. Ope.		Opes.
		Opibus.

1. Fru-

1. Frugis, of fruit. 2. Ditionis, of rule or authority. 3. Precis, of prayer. Procēris, of a Peer, or head man, want only the Nominative and Vocative case singular.

Vis, force, wants the dative singular.

Singulariter	Nom. Vis.	} Pluraliter	Nom. Vires.
	Gen. Vis.		Gen. Virium.
	Dat.		Dat. Viribus.
	Acc. Vim.		Acc. Vires.
	Voc. vis:		Voc. Vires.
	Abl. Vi.		Abl. Viribus.

Jovis. Sing. Gen. Dat. Jovi. Acc. Jovem. Abl. Jove.

1. Ambage, an idle circumstance of words. 2. Fauce, the cheek or jaws. 3. Crate, an hurdle, have only the Ablative case in the singular number, and are perfect in the plural: as, Singulariter Ablat. Ambage. Plur. Ambages, Ambagium, Ambagibus, Ambages, Ambagibus.

1. Far, all kind of Corn. 2. Mel, Honey. 3. Rus, the Countrey. 4. Thus, Frankincense, have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative case in the plural number: as,

Singulariter	Nom. Mel.	} Pluraliter	Nom. Mella.
	Gen. Mellis.		
	Dat. Melli.		Acc. Mella.
	Acc. Mel.		
	Voc. Mel.		Voc. Mella.
	Abl. Melle.		

1. Tempê, a fair field in Thessaly. 2. Cetê, a Whale. 3. Melê, Songs, want the singular

Of Irregular words.

lar number, and have onely the Dominative, Accusative, and Vocative case in the plural: as, *Plur. Nom. tempê, Accus. tempê. Voc. tempê.*

Vas, a Vessel, is thus declined.

Singulariter	Nom. Vas.	Pluraliter	Vasa.
	Gen. Vasis.		Vasorum.
	Dat. Vasi.		Vasis.
	Accu. Vas.		Vasa.
	Voc. Vas.		Vasa.
	Abl. Vase.		Vasis.

Argos, a famous City of Peloponnesus. Gen. Argeos, the Neuter Gender in the singular number. Plur. Nom. & Voc. Argi. Dat. & Abl. Argis. Accu. Argos, of the Masculine Gender, and second Declension.

These for the most part want the plural number: pulvis, dust. Nemo, no man. Pudor, shamefastness. & aer. Soror, a sound sleep. Æther, the Firmament. Sanguis, blood. Aer, air.

And Pubes, gen. pubis, ripeness of age. Salus, gen. salutis, health. Nex, gen. Necis, violent death. Talio, gen. Talionis, like for like. Indoles, towardness, gen. Indolis. Tussis, a cough, gen. Tussis. Lux, light, gen. Lucis. Plebs, the common people, gen. plebis. Lues, pestilence in men, murrain in cattle, gen. luis. Tabes, a consuming of the body by long sickness, gen. tabis. Mors, death, gen. mortis.

Of Irregular words.

mortis. Supellex, householdstuffe, gen. supellectilis. Quies, sleep or rest, gen. quietis. Bilis, choller or anger, gen. bilis. Proles, a child, gen. prolis. Sitis, thirst, gen. sitis. Senectus, old age, gen. senectutis. Paupertas, poverty, gen. paupertatis. Soboles, an issue, or offspring, gen. Sobolis. Fames, hunger, gen. Famis. Contagio, an infectious disease, gen. contagionis. Tellus, the Earth, gen. Telluris. Jubar, the Sun-beam, gen. jubaris. Nectar, the drink of the Gods, gen. Nectaris. Ver, the Spring, gen. veris. Hæc, a Herring, gen. Hæcis. Gluten, glue, gen. glutinis. Ebur, Ivory, gen. eboris. Fel, gall, gen. fellis. Siser, the Parsnip, gen. Siseris. Siler, a small withy, gen. Silëris.

These Nouns are of the Masculine Gender and plurall number onely. Hæc sunt Masculi generis numerique secundi tantum.

Antes, gen. Antium, the first rowes of Vines. Menfes, gen. Mensium, an issue of blood. Manes, gen. Manium, the souls of the dead. Lemures, gen. Lemurum, ghosts or spirits. Natales, gen. Natalium, a stock. Penates, gen. Penatium, household Gods.

Joyn to these fores, res, a door, or gate, gen. forium. Lactes, muliebria, the small gut, gen. lactium. Grates, thanks. Plur. nom. grates. Accu. grates. Voc. grates, being Feminines.

And these *Neuters*. *Mapalia*, Gen. *Mapaliorum*, & *Mapalium*. Dat. *Mapalibus*, *Cotages*, &c. *Sponsalia*, Gen. *Sponsaliorum* & *Sponsalium*. Dat. *Sponsalibus*, &c. a *Contract*, or *betrothing* a man or woman. *Moenia*, Gen. *Moeniorum*, & *moenium*. Dat. *Moenibus*, &c. the *wals* of a *City*.

Irregular Nouns in the Fourth Declension.

The Ablative cases of these nouns, are only in use.

Horum Ablativi tantum sunt in usu.

Noctu, by night. *Natu*, by birth. *Jussu*, by bidding. *Injussu*, by forbidding. *Promptu*, with speed. *Permissu*, by sufferance.

Gelu, frost, not declined in the singular number, wants the plural.

Artus, the joints, wants the singular number. Plur. *Artus*. Gen. *Artum*. Dat. *Artibus*, &c. and *Idus*, the Ides of a month: Plur. Nom. *Idus*. Gen. *Iduum*, &c.

Irregular Nouns in the Fifth Declension.

Rule.
Planities
equabilitate.
Bar. En.
phor.

Nouns of the Fifth Declension, admit only three cases in the

Nomina quintæ Declinationis in plurali tres tantum
plural

plural number, the *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*. *rum* *admittunt causus*, *Nominativum*, *Accusativum*, *Vocativum*.

Except *res*, a thing: species, a shape, or form: *facies*, a face, and *acies*, an edge, and dies, a day, which are perfect in the plural number. *Excipe*, *res*, species, *facies*, *acies*; *dis*que, *quæ* in plurali *sunt integra*. Exc. 1. and Supr.

Expes, void, or past hope, is only read in Exc. 2. the *Nominative* case.

Fides, faith. Gen. *Fidei*. *Requies*, rest, Exc. 2. Gen. *Requiei*. *Meridies*, Mid-day. Gen. *Meridiei*. *Rabies*, the madness of a mad dog, Gen. *Rabiei*, want the plural number.

A mixture of some Nouns out of Rule.

These change no case: *nil*, nothing: *fas*, lawful: *nefas*, a thing detestable, a cursed deed: *instar*, like, as it were: and want the plural. *Hæc* *nullum* *variant*: *nil*, *nihil*, *fas*, *nefas*, *instar*, & *destituuntur* plurali. Rule 1.

Also *Cæpe*, an Onion: * *Pondo*, a weight, or pound weight: *Gaulape*, a Frize, or rough Garment: *Volupe*, delectable, pleasant. * Is used both in the singular and plural.

Of Irregular words.

Rule 2. Names of letters are undeclined. *as*, Alpha, Beta. Nomina literarum sunt aclita: *ut*, Alpha, Beta.

Rule 3. Words uttered materially, or for themselves, are undeclined: *as*, this word *bonus* is an Adjective. Voces materialiter enunciatæ sunt aclitæ: *ut*, *bonus* est adjectivum.

Rule 4. Barbarous or rude words, are undeclined: *as*, *frit*, the light corn in the top of the ear. *Gru*, dirt under the nail. Barbaræ dictiones non variantur. *ut*, *frit*, *gru*.

Rule 5. Many Nouns ending in *i*: *as*, *Sinapi*, mustard seed. *Gummi*, Gumme. *Semi*, half, and Nouns ending in *u*: *as*, *cornu*, a horn: *genu*, a knee, are not declined in the singular number, but are perfect in the plural: *as*,

Singulariter	Nom. Cornu.	Pluraliter	Nom. Cornua,
	Gen. Cornu.		Gen. Cornuum.
	Dat. Cornu.		Dat. Cornibus.
	Accu. Cornu.		Acc. Cornua.
	Voc. Cornu.		Voc. Cornua.
	Abl. Cornu.		Abl. Cornibus.

Rule 6. *Danesa* If a Noun be compounded of two Nominative cases, and Si nomen compo- natur ex duobus Nominativis, & de- be

Of Irregular words.

be declined, both the one and the other word is declined *as* *Respublica*, a Commonwealth. *Unusquisque*, every one. *Iusjurandum*, &c. clinationem recipiat, utraque dictio declinatur: *ut*, *Respublica*, *unusquisque*.

Singulariter	Respublica	Pluraliter	Respublicæ
	Reipublicæ		Rerum publicarum
	Reipublicæ		Rebus publicis
	Rempublicam		Respublicas
	Respublica		Respublicæ
	Republicâ		Rebus publicis.

Except alteruter, the one or the other, which is declined, Nom. alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum: Gen. alterutrius. Dat. alterutri. Accu. alterutrum, &c. in the latter part of the Composition only; and *Leopardus*, gen. *Leopardi*, a Leopard, with *olus-atrum*, gen. *olus-atri*, or *oleris-atri*, an herb called Loveage. Duo also in Composition is not varied *as* *Duodevigessimus*, &c.

If a Noun be compounded of a Nominative case, and another case, the Nominative only is declined: *as*, *Senatusconsultum*, but if of two cases that are not Nominative, the whole Noun is undeclined.

Rule 7. Si nomen compo- natur ex recto & obliquo, rectus; solus declinatur: *ut*, *Senatusconsultum*, si ex duobus obliquis, totum invariabile *ut* *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *illiusmodi*.

I s Senatus.

Senatus-consultum, an Ordinance of the Senate.

Sing. { *Nom.* *Senatus-consultum.*
Gen. *Senatus-consulti.*
Dat. *Senatus-consulto.*
Acc. *Senatus-consultum.*
Voc. *Senatus-consultum.*
Abl. *Senatus-consulto.*

Plural. { *Nom.* *Senatus-consulta.*
Gen. *Senatus-consultorum.*
Dat. *Senatus-consultis.*
Acc. *Senatus-consulta.*
Voc. *Senatus-consulta.*
Abl. *Senatus-consultis.*

Rule 1. Observe all proper names, which have a restraining nature, that they shall not be plurals : as, Mars, Gen. Martis, the Heathenish God of battel. *Propria cuncta notes, quibus est natura, coercens, plurima nē fuerint : ut, Mars, Cato, Gallia, Roma, Rome.*
 Cato, Gen. Catonis, the name of a wise man in Rome.

To this rule belong proper names, 1. Of Heathen Gods. 2. Of Men. 3. Of Countries. 4. Of Cities. 5. Of Mountains. 6. Of Rivers. 7. Of Dogs. 8. Of Horses.

Rule 2. Proper names sometimes are declined in both numbers. *Propria nonnunquam, numero flexuntur utroque.*
 1. When

1. When more of the same name are noted : as, trecenti Fabii, three hundred of the stock of Fabius.

2. When propriety is only signified : as, non omnes possumus esse Catones, we cannot be all Catoes.

Sint Mecanates, non deerunt Flacce Marones.

Thou shalt adde to His frumenta da-
 these, 1. bread corn. bis, pensa, herbas,
 2. Things delivered by uda, metalla.
 weight. 3. Hearbs.
 4. Moist things. 5. Metals.

Observations:

1. By bread corn, understand Wheat, and Rye ; not Barly and Oats.

2. By things delivered by weight, understand Pepper, Sugar, &c.

3. By hearbs, understand Rue, Sage, &c.

4. By moist things, Oyl, Vinegar, &c.

5. By Metals, Gold, Silver, Iron, &c.

Nouns Substantives, Redundant, or abounding.

Some Nouns are allotted the form of two Declensions : as, Mendum, mendi, and menda, mendæ, a fault in writing. Pa-vo, pavonis, and Pavis, Pavi, a Peacock.

Quædam duarum Declinationum formam sortiuntur : ut, Mendum, menda, Pavo, Pavis, &c.

Rule 1.

Rule 2.

A Nominative case of the first Declension ariseth from a Greek Accusative case of the third Declension: as, crater, acc. cratera. Sing. No. cratera, cratera.

Ex Accusativo Græco tertiæ inflexionis, nascitur nominativus primæ: ut, à crater, Accusativo cratera, &c.

Rule 3.

Some Nouns have two endings in the same Declension: as, Clypeus, a buckler, and clypeum baculus, a staffe, and baculum.

Gemina nonnullis est terminatio in eadem Declinatione: ut, Clypeus, i: clypeum, i: baculus, i: baculum, baculi, &c.

Rule 4.

Some Nouns onely vary or abound in the Nominative case: as, Nom. vomis, & vomer. Gen. vomeris, a plow-share. Nom. cucumis, and cucumer. Gen. cucumeris, a Cucumber.

Quædam in Nominativo tantum variant: ut, vomis & vomer, cucumis cucumer.

Rule 5.

Some Nouns of the fourth Declension chuse some oblique cases of the second. All cases are called oblique cases, except the Nominative and Vocative.

Quædam nomina quartæ Declinationis adoptant quosdam casus obliquos secundæ.

1 Laurus item 2 quercus, pro fructu ac arbore 3 Ficus. Sit 4 colus atque 5 Domus, 6 Pinus, proque arbore 7 Cornus. Pinus

Pinus and Cornus are rather of the fourth than the second Declension.

Gradere ad infernos specus, Sen. Trag. Abl. penta & specu.

Irregular Adjectives,

Tandundem, even so much. Sing. Nom. Rule 1. & Acc. Tandundem. Gen. Tantidem.

Maïus, increased or augmented. Sing. Nom. Maïus. Voc. Maïe. Plur. Nom. Maïti.

Plus, more. Sing. Nom. & Acc. Plus. Gen. Pluris. Plu. Nom. Plures & plura. Gen. plurium. Dat. pluribus, &c.

Plerique, many, the most part. Singulari caret. Plur. Plerique, pleræque pleraque.

Singuli, every one, each, it is seldom read in the singular number. Plur. Nom. singuli, singulæ, singula. Gen. singulorum, &c. Neceffe, needs, of necessity. Sing. Nom. & Acc. Neceffe, and neceffum, necessary, or needful. Sing. Nom. & Acc. neceffum, of the Neuter Gender.

Nequam, an ill man, a naughty unthrif, undeclined in both numbers.

Tot, so many. Plur. tot per omnes casus. Quot, how many. Plur. quot per omnes casus. Totidem, even, or just so many. Plur. totidem per omnes casus. Aliquot, some. Plur. aliquot, per omnes casus.

Nouns of number Numeralia à tribus from three to an hundred Plurals, are not declined: as, quatuor quatuor, quing; sex, four. Plur. quatuor & cætera cardinalia. per omnes casus. Rule 2. Quinque, five; sex, six; and the residue of Cardinals. Mille,

Mille, a thousand, when it is an Adjective, it is underlined in the plural number: as, *Plur.* Mille per omnes casus. But mille, when it is a Substantive, it is declined in the plural number: as, *Plur.* Nom. Millia. Gen. Millium. Dat. Millibus.

Rule 3:

These Adjectives take three terminations in the Nominative case singular: celer, swift, and celer, well renowned.

Hæc Adjectiva tres sortiuntur terminationes in Nominativo singulari, celer, atque celer.

Acer, sharp, or tart. Alacer, cheerful, quick of spirit. Pedester, a foot man. Equester, a horse man. Saluber, healthful, wholesome. Campester, of the plain, or Champion Country, or Field. Sylvester, of a Wood, or Forest. Paluster, of, or belonging to a Fen, or Marsh: as,

Sing. Nom. Acer, masc. Acris, fœm. Acre, neut. or,

Nom. Acris, masc. and fœm. and Acre, neut.

Gen. Acris.

Dat. Acri, &c. like tristis.

So celer, celeris, celere, or Nom. celeris, masc. & fœm. celere, neut. Gen. celeris, &c.

Locuples, rich, abundant. Uber, fertile, fruitfull. Degener, unnoble, growing out of kind. Pauper, poor, needy. Inops, poor, needy. Sospes, whole, safe. Superstes, a survivor. Comis, gentle, milde. Puber, full grown. Memor, mindful, are seldom read in the Plur.

ter gender, especially in the plural number.

Adjectives Irregular, in comparison.

Adjectives which are derived of dico, loquor, volo, facio, form the degrees as it were from positives in ens: as, maledicus, maledicentior, maledicentissimus.

Quæ derivantur à Rule 4. dico, loquor, volo, facio, formant gradus tanquam à positivis in ens: ut, maledicus.

Positive.
bonus, good.
malus, ill.
magnus, great.
multus, much.
vetus, old.
deter, ill.
nequam, lewd.

Comparative.
melior, better.
pejor, worse.
major, greater.
plus, more.
veterior, elder.
deterior, worse.
nequior, more lewd.

Superlative.
optimus, best.
pessimus, worst.
maximus, greatest.
plurimus, very much.
veterimus, eldest.
deterimus, worst.
nequissimus, most lewd.

These are forsaken of the positive: prior, the former: primus, the first: ocior, more swift: ocissimus, swiftest: penitior, more inward: penitissimus, as far in as can be:

Positivo destituuntur ista: prior, primus, ocior, ocissimus; penitior, penitissimus.

These are forsaken of the Comparative degree.

Comparativo destituuntur ista.
Novus,

Novus, *new*. Novissimus, *the last or hindmost*. Invitus, *unwilling*. Invitissimus, *most unwilling, against heart and mind*. Inclytus, *glorious, famous*. Inclytissimus, *most glorious or excellent*. Diversus, *divers, or unlike*. Diverfissimus, *most differing or unlike*. Meritus, *that hath deserved*. Meritissimus, *that hath most deserved*. Sacer, *holy or consecrated*. Sacerrimus, *most holy*. Falsus, *deceived, or false*. Falsissimus, *most false*. Fidus, *trusty*. Fidissimus, *most trusty*. Nuperus, *late done*. Nuperimus, *last done*.

Rule 7.] *These Adjectives Superlativo carent want the Superlative ista. degree.*

Positiva sunt Sinistimus Dexter, right. Dexterior, more of the right hand. Sinister, on the left hand. Sinistrior, more on the left hand. Opimus, fat, rich, plentiful. Opimior, more fat or rich. Juvenis, young. Junior, younger. Senex, old. Senior, elder. Declivis, bending downward. Declivior, more bending downward. Longinquus, far off. Longinquior, farther off. Salutaris, wholesome. Salutarior, more wholesome. Supinus, upward, also negligent. Supinior, more idle, or negligent.

Rule 8. *Anterior, the former, and Licentior, over-liberal, want the Positive and Superlative degree. Anterior & Licentior, Positivo carent, & Superlativo.*

Finis Libri Tertii.



THE FOURTH BOOK.

Rules concerning the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs.

A General Rule.

THe syllable which is doubled in the beginning, or forepart of the Preterperf. Tens of the uncompounded Verb, is not doubled in the Supines, nor yet in the Preterperfect Tenses, and Supines of Verbs compounded: as, pendo, to weigh. Suspendo, to hang up, or hang upon.

Syllaba quæ in Rule, simplicis præteriti fronte geminatur in supinis non geminatur, uti nec in præteritis & supinis compositorum: ut, pendo, pependi, pensum, suspendo, suspendi, suspensum.

Exception:

In the Compounds of do, to give, disco, to learn, posco, to require, and also in some Compounds of pungo, to prick, and curro, to run, the syllable of the Preterperfect Tense is doubled.

Concer-

Concerning the Preterperfect Tense, and Supine of Verbs of the first Conjugation.

Rule 1.

O, as, amo : as, as, amas, in the Present Tense formeth the Preterperfect Tense in avi : as, amavi, and the Supine in atum : as, amatum.

O, as, in praesenti format praeteritum in avi, & supinum in atum : ut, amo, amas, amavi, amatum.

Exercise to decline these verbs as you learn them.

Plico, plicavi, plicatum, to fold.

Multiplico, multiplicavi, multiplicatum, to multiply.

Supplico, supplicavi, supplicatum, to intreat.

Replico, replicavi, replicatum, to reply, or unfold.

Duplico, duplicavi, duplicatum, to double.

Triplico, triplicavi, triplicatum, to triple.

Applicatus applicatum.

Applico, { applicui, } applicitum, } to apply
{ applicavi, } applicatum, }

Explico, { explicui, } explicitum, } to unfold.
{ explicavi, } explicatum, }

Implico, { Implicui, } Implicitum, } to fold in.
{ Implicavi, } Implicatum, }

Complicatus, complicatum.

Complico, { Complicui, } Complicitum, } to wrap together.
{ Complicavi, } Complicatum, }

Exception

Exception.

Juvo, juvi, jutum, and adjuvo, adjuvi, adjutum, to help. Lavo, lavi, lavatum, to wash. Poto, potavi, potatum, and potum, to drink. Cubo, cubui, cubitum, to lie down. Domo, domui, domitum, to tame. Sono, sonui, sonitum, to sound. Tono, tonui, tonitum, to thunder. Attono, attonui, attonitum, to make abashed. Crepo, crepui, crepitum, to give a crack. Veto, vetui, vetitum, to forbid. Frico, fricui, frictum, to rub. Mico, micui, without Supines, to shine. Neco, necui, necum, to kill. Seco, secui, sectum, to cut. Do, dedi, datum, to give. Circundo, Circundedi, circundatum, to compass about. Pessundo, pessundedi, pessundatum, to tread, or cast under foot, to undo. Satisdo, satisfidedi, satisfidatum, to put in sufficient sureties for performance of covenants. Venundo, Venundedi, Venundatum, to sell. Sto, steti, statum, to stand. Circumsto, circumsteti, to compass, or stand about, the rest of the Compounds have stiti in the Preterperfect Tense, and situm in the Supine. Nexo, to knit. Labo, to waver, lack Preterperfect Tense, and Supines.

These in the Compounds change a into e : damno, to condemn : lacto, to allure : sacro, to dedicate : tracto, to handle : patro, to commit : as,

Condemno, condemnavi, condemnatum, to

Hac in compositis Rule 22 mutant a in e : damno, lacto, sacro, tracto, patro.

188 The Pret. Tense and Sup. of Verbs

to condemn. Delecto, delectavi, delectatum, to delight. Consecro, consecravi, consecratum, to dedicate. Detrecto, detrectavi, detrectatum, to shift off, or refuse to do. Perpetro, perpetravi, perpetratum, to commit. Ercepr, Retracto, to draw back. Pertracto, to handle much. Ablacto, to mean, which keep a.

Rule 3.

The Compounds of calco, to tread upon, or stamp down; salto, to leap, change a into u; as, inculco, to pour in, or often to repeat. Composita à calco salto mutant (a) in (u) ut, inculceo, insulto, to leap up, or to rebound.

Annotations.

1. Observe that many of the Verbs excepted to the first rule, have sometimes the Preterperfect Tense in avi: as, resonavi, and dimicavi usually.
2. Exercise your self to understand whether the Verb swerves or departs from the general rule in the Preterperfect Tense, or Supine, or both. For example, I would know, whether seco, secui, sectum, be excepted in the Pret. perf. Tense, or sup. or in both. First, I seek the defected or reserved Letters, by cutting off o from seco, and there is left sec. To these I add avi, atum, secavi, secatum, and the exception being secui, sectum, it appears that the Preterperfect Tense and Supine are excepted.

But

of the second Conjugation.

189

But in lavo, lavi, lavatum, the Preterperfect Tense onelp.

3. Dissolve the Compound Verb: as, inculco, is compounded of in and calco, &c. and besides the ordinary declining of every Verb, give the Cognate Tenses from the Present and Preterperfect tens, lib. 1. p. 96.

The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the second Conjugation.

EO, es, in the Present Tense, formeth the Preterperfect Tense in ui, and the Supine in itum: as, habeo, to have or hold. Post habeo, to put back, or esteem lesse.

EO, es in præsentis Rule 1. Perfectum format in ui, supinum in itum: ut, habeo, habes, habui, habitum, post habeo, post habes, post habui, post habitum.

All other Compounds of habeo, change ha into hi: as,

Adhibeo, adhibui, adhibuitum, to use. Cohibeo, cohibui, cohibuitum, to restrain. Exhibeo, exhibui, exhibuitum, to present. Inhibeo, inhibui, inhibuitum, to withhold. Perhibeo, perhibui, perhibuitum, to affirm. Prohibeo, prohibui, prohibuitum, to forbid. Redhibeo, Redhibui, Redhibuitum, to sue or compel the seller to take again the thing that is sold by him.

Exception

Exception:

bee. Jubeo, jussi, jussum, to command. Sorbeo, forbui, sorptum, to sup any moisture.

ceo. Doceo, docui, doctum, to teach. Misceo, miscui, mistum, to mingle. Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, to pacify, or mitigate.

deo. Suadeo, suasi, suatum, to counsel. Sedeo, sedi, sessum, to sit. Supersedeo, superse-di, superse-ssum, to omit, or ease. Circumsedeo, circumse-di, circumse-ssum, to sit round.

All other the Compounds of sedeo, change se into si: as,

Affideo, affedi, assessum, to sit nigh unto.

Confideo, confedi, confessum, to sit together.

Desideo, desedi, desessum, to sit still idle.

Insideo, infedi, infessum, to sit upon.

Obsideo, obfedi, obfessum, to besiege.

Persideo, persedi, persessum, to sit still.

Præsideo, præfedi, præsessum, to be in dignity.

Resideo, resedi, resessum, to rest in a place.

Subsideo, subfedi, subfessum, to sit under.

Freudeo, frendi, fressum, to gnash with the teeth.

Video, vidi, visum, to see.

Rideo, risi, risum, to laugh at.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn.

Mordeo, momordi, morsum, to bite.

Spondeo, spondi, sponsum, to promise freely.

Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, to clip, or shear.

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

geo. Tergeo, terfi, tersum, to wipe, or make clean. Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant lightly, or to make much of one. Mulgeo, mulxi, and mulsi, mulctum, to milk or stroak. Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. Lugeo, luxi, luctum, to mourn, or lament.

Deleo,

of the second Conjugation.

Deleo, deleui, deletum, to deface, or blot a thing written. Fleo, fleui, fletum, to weep.

Impleo, impleui, impletum, to fill.

Maneo, mansi, mansum, to tarry, or remain. neo.

Permaneo, permansi, permansum, to abide to the end.

Remaneo, remansi, remansum, to tarry behind.

Commaneo, commansi, commansum, to tarry, or abide together.

Emaneo, emansi, emansum, to stay out of a place.

Obmaneo, obmansi, obmansum, to abide long.

Intermaneo, intermansi, intermansum, to stay between.

The Compounds of maneo, which change

ma into mi, make the Preterperfect

Tense in ui, and want the Supines:

as,

Eminéo, eminui, to be higher then others.

Imminéo, imminui, to hang over.

Prominéo, prominui, to appear, and stand out farther then another, to extend.

Præminéo, præminui, to appear before others.

Supereminéo, supereminui, to excel much, or overcome.

Tenéo, tenui, tentum, to hold.

The Compounds of tenéo, change te into ti: as,

Contineo, continui, contentum, to contain.

Retineo, retinui, retentum, to retain.

Detineo, detinui, detentum, to detain.

Attineo, attinui, to attain, without Supines.

Pertineo, pertinui, to reach, or pertain, without Supines.

Abstineo, abstinui, to abstain, without Supines.

Torqueo, torxi, tortum, to wreath.

Harceo, queo,

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

- reo. Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick to. Torreo, torruī, torsum, to roast.
- feo. Censeo, censui, censum, to suppose or think.
- veo. Caveo, cavi, cautum, to beware. Faveo, favi, fautum, to favour. Moveo, movi, motum, to move. Foveo, fovi, fōtum, to cherish. Voveo, vovi, votum, to vow.
- ieo. Cicio, civi, citum, to provoke or move to anger. Vico, vievi, vietum, to bind.

Rule 2.

These want the Preterperfect Tense, and moreover the Supine: Carent præterito adeoque Supino, hæc polleo, renideo, glabreo, denseo, flaveo, liveo, clueo, medeor. Polleo, to be able. Renideo, to shine. Glabreo, to be naked or bare. Denseo, to congeal or thicken. Flaveo, to be yellow. Liveo, to be black and blew. Clueo, to be named, or esteemed. Medeor, to heal.

Polleo, polles, sine præterito, pollere, pollendi, pollendo, pollendum, sine Supinis pollens, so decline the rest.

Rule 3.

These want the Supines onely: Hæc tantum carent Supinis, arceo, arceui, abarceo, abarceui. arceo, to drive away. abarceo, to prohibit.

Two Compounds of arceo, change a into e, and have the Supines: as, exerceo, exercui, exercitum, to exercise. Coerceo, coercui, coercitum, to restrain or keep in.

Egeo, egui, to want, without Supines. Indigeo, indigui, to lack, sine Supinis. Aceo, acui, to be eager, tart, or sore. Luceo, luxi,

of the second Conjugation.

Luxi, to shine. Pendeo, pependi, to hang or be hanged. Strideo, stridi, to make a noise or crash. Algeo, alsi, to chill for cold. Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine or glister. Turgeo, tursi, to swell up or grow big. Urgeo, ursi, to presse out, to urge. Frigeo, frixi, to be cold. Neo, nevi, to spin. Liqueo, licui, to melt. Pateo, parui, to be opened. Paveo, pavi, to fear. Ferveo, fervi, and ferbui, to be hot. Conniveo, connivi and connixi, to wink with the eyes. Languo, langui, to languish. Timeo, timui, to fear.

Timeo, times, timui, timere, timendi timendo, timendum, sine Supinis, timens &c.

Verbs Neuters in the second Conjugation which form the Preterperfect Tense in ui, want the Supines.

Neutra secundâ Rule 4. Conjugatione quæ formant præteritum per iii carent Supinis: ut, mædeo, mædui, to be moist.

Except.

Placeo, placui, placitum, to please. Complaceo, complacui, complacitum, to please very well. Perplaceo, perplacui, perplacitum, to content very much. Beneplaceo, beneplacui, beneplacitum, to please well.

Displiceo, displicui, to displease, wants the Supines. Taceo, tacui, tacitum, to keep silence: but Conticeo, conticui, to hold ones peace. Obtriceo, obtriciui, to keep silence. Reticeo, reticui, to keep silence.

194 The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

Subticeo, Subticui, to keep silence, being
Compounds of taceo, changing ta into ti, lack
the Supines. Noceo, nocui, nocitum, to
hurt. Caleo, calui, calitum, to be hot. Va-
leo, valui, valitum, to be able of force, and
power. Oleo, olui, olitum, to sent or savour.
Suboleo, subolui, subolitum, to smell a little.
Redoleo, redolui, redolitum, to smell sweet.
Oboleo, obolui, obolitum, to stink. Exoleo,
exolevi, exoletum, to grow into oblivion. Ob-
soleo, obsolevi, obsoletum, to wax old. Ab-
oleo, abolevi, abolitum, to abolish. Adoleo,
adolevi, adultum, to begin to grow. Doleo,
dolui, dolitum, to be grieved. Parco, pa-
rui, paritum, to obey. Careo, carui, caritum,
to want. Lateo, latui, latitum, to lie hid.
Diliteo, dilitui, to lurk, wants the Sup.

*; Neuter
Pa lves
are so cal-
led either
in respect
of their
Passive sig-
nification,
or Pret.
Tense, or
both.

Neuter Passives * wanting Supines.

Audeo, ausus sum, to be bold or to dare.
Gaudeo, gavisus sum, to rejoyce or to be glad.
Soleo, to be accustomed, solitus sum. Moe-
reo, moetus sum, to be sad.

Audeo audes, ausus sum, or ausus fui.
Audere, audendi, audendo, audendum, sine
Supinis, audens; in like manner decline
the rest.

Verbs Deponents of the second Conju-
gation, lacking Supines.

Reor, ratus sum, to think or suppose. Mife-
reor, misertus sum, to pity. Fateor, fassus
sum, to confesse.

of the second Conjugation:

195

The Compounds of fateor, change fa
into fi: as,

Confiteor, confessus sum, to confess.
Profiteor, professus sum, to profess. Dif-
fiteor, sine praeterito, to deny. Tueor, tui-
tus sum, to defend.

Note.

Deponents are declined like Verbs Passives,
saying that they have Gerunds, the first
Supine, and the Participle of the present
Tense; and future in rus, like as A-
ctive. And also the latter Supine and
future in dus, if they will govern an Ac-
cusative or Ablative case: as, complector,
complecteris vel complectere, complexus
sum vel fui, complecti, complectendi, com-
plectendo, complectendum, complexum,
complexu, complectens, complexurus,
complexus, complectendus.

Verbs Impersonals of the second Conjugation
having two Preterperfect Tenses, one
of the Active, another of the
Passive.

Libet, libuit, and libitum est, it liketh or
contenteth. Licet, licuit, and licitum est, it
is lawfull. Pertædet, pertæduit, and pertæ-
sum est, to loath greatly or to be very weary of.
Pudet, puduit, and puditum est, to be asha-
med. Piget, piguit, and pigitum est, it grie-
veth

*vet*h or *repenteth*. *Miseret*, *it pitieth*, hath only *miserum est*. *Liquet*, *it appeareth*, or *it is clear*, hath no *Preterperfect Tense*. *Poenitet*, *poenituit*, *it repenteth*. *Libet*, *libebat*, *libuit*, and *libitum est*, or *libitum fuit*, *libuerat* and *libitum erat*, or *libitum fuerat*, *libebit*, *Imperat*. *libeat*, &c.

The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

To find the *Preterper. Tense* and *sup.* of verbs of the *Third Conjugation*, observe the last syllable of the first person of the *Present Tense*, according to the order of the letters.

1. B O.

Scribo, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, *to write*. *Nubo*, *nupsi*, *nuptum*, *to be married*.

Bibo, *bibi*, *bibitum*, *to drink*. *Incumbo*, *incubui*, *incubitum*, *to lean upon*, or *endeavour earnestly*. *Decumbo*, *decubui*, *decubitum*, *to lye down*. *Occumbo*, *occubui*, *occubitum*, *to dye or lye down*. *Procumbo*, *procubui*, *procubirum*, *to lye flat or groveling*.

2. Co.

Dico, *dixi*, *dictum*, *to say*. *Duco*, *duxi*, *ductum*, *to lead*. *Ico*, *ici*, *ictum*, *to strike*. *Vinco*, *vici*, *victum*, *to overcome*. *Parco*, *peperci* & *parsi*, *parcirum* & *parsum*, *to spare*.

3. Sco.

3. Sco.

Nosco, *novi*, *notum*, *to know*. *Agnosco*, *agnovi*, *agnitum*, *to acknowledge*. *Cognosco*, *cognovi*, *cognitum*, *to know*. *Ignosco*, *ignovi*, *ignotum*, *to pardon or know well*. *Cresco*, *crevi*, *cretum*, *to grow or increase*. *Pasco*, *pavi*, *pastum*, *to feed*. *Depasco*, *depavi*, *depastum*, *to eat all*. *Epasco*, *epavi*, *epastum*, *to consume all*. *Compasco*, *compavi*, *compastum*, *to feed together*. *Compesco*, *compescui*, *compescitum*, *to restrain*. *Dispesco*, *dispescui*, *dispescitum*, *to drive away beasts from pasture*. *Impesco*, *to turn beasts into rank corn*, which these *Compounds* change *pasco* into *pesco*. *Quiesco*, *quievi*, *quietum*, *to rest*. *Acquiesco*, *acquievi*, *acquietum*, *to obey*. *So conquesco*, *to abide*. *Requiesco*, *to rest*. *Suesco*, *suevi*, *suetum*, *to wont, or accustom, or to be accustomed*. *Attente Suetus sum*, *I am accustomed*. *So Assuesco*, *to practise by custom*. *Consuesco*, *to use a thing much*.

Desuesco, *to change ones fashion*. *Disuesco*, *to disaccustom*; and *Insuesco*, *to be trained in a thing*.

4. Do.

Edo, *edi*, *esum*, *to eat*.

Comedo, *comedi*, *comesum*, and *comestum*, *to eat together*.

Abedo, *abedi*, *abesum*, *to gnaw*.

Ambedo, *ambedi*, *ambesum*, *to eat about*.

Exedo, *exedi*, *exesum*, *to eat up*.

K 3

Super-

Superedo, superedi, superesum, to eat more. Obedo, obedi, obesum, to consume. Peredo, peredi, peresum, to eat quite through. Subedo, subedi, subesum, to eat underneath. Mando, mavedi, mansum, to eat. Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb. Ascendo, ascendi, ascentum, to mount up, with the rest of the Compounds, change scando into scendo, and scansum into scensum: as, conscendo, conscendi, conscensum, to mount up. Descendo, descendi, descensum, to descend, go or sink down.

Inscendo, inscendi, incensum, to climb up unto. Cudo, cudi, cusum, to forge as Smiths do. Prehendo, prehendi, prehensum, to take. Accendo, accendi, accensum, to kindle. Incendo, incendi, incensum, to inflame. Defendo, defendi, defensum, to defend, save or preserve. Offendo, offendi, offensum, to find by chance or do amiss. Claudio, clausi, clausum, to shut. The Compounds of claudio change claudio, clausi, clausum, into cludo, clusi, clusum: as, accludo, acclusi, acclusum, to hold in. Concludo, conclusi, conclusum, to conclude. So Circumcludo, to close about. Excludo, to shut out. Includo, to close in. Occludo, to shut against. Percludo, to shut fast. Præcludo, to shut up or stop. Recludo, to open or reveal. Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to applaud. Applaudo, applausi, applausum, to clap hands for joy. Complaudo, complausi, complausum, to clap hands for joy. Displodo, displosi, displosum, to break in sunder with a noise, to shoot off. Explodo, explosi, explosum, to hiss out. Rado, rasi, rasum, to shave.

Vado,

Vado, vasi, vasum, to go; which præterperfect tense and supine is scarce to be found. Evado, evasi, evasum, to escape. Invado, invasi, invasum, to invade or lay hold on. Circumvado, circumvasi, circumvasum, to go about. Pervado, pervasi, pervasum, to go through. Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. Oblædo, oblæsi, oblæsum, to hurt sore. Allido, allisi, allisum, to dash or bruise; and the rest of the Compounds change læ into li: as, Collido, collisi, collisum, to knock or bruise together. Divido, divisi, divisum, to divide. Rodo, rosi, rosum, to gnaw. Ludo, lusi, lusum, to play. Trudo, trusi, trusum, to thrust out with violence. Fundo, fudi, fusum, to pour out. Findo, fidi, fissum, to cleave. Scindo, scidi, scissum, to cut. Pando, pandi, passum and pansum, to open. Cado, cecidi, casum, to fall. Occido, occidi, occasum, to fall against, to die; with the rest of the Compounds, change ca into ci, but want the Supines: as, Accido, accidi, to fall or happen to. Excido, excidi, to fall out or fall away. Decido, decidi, to fall away. Incido, incidi, to fall in, to happen. Recido, recidi, to fall backward. Succido, succidi, to fall under. Procido, procidi, to fall down. Supercido, supercidi, to fall upon. Concido, concidi, to fall together. Intercido, intercidi, to fall betwixt. Cædo, cæcidi, cæsum, to beat or cut. The Compounds of cædo change cæ into ci: as, Ascido, ascidi, ascisum, to cut asunder. Excido, excidi, excisum, to destroy. Incido, incidi, incisum, to tear in pieces. Occido, occidi, occisum, to kill. Percido, percidi, percisum, to knock and beat vehemently. Præ-

K 4

cido,

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

cīdo, præcīdi, præcīsum, to strike or chop off. Intercīdo, intercīdi, intercīsum, to cut down or cut asunder. Recīdo, recīdi, recīsum, to cut again. Cedo, cessi, cessum, to give place. Pendo, pependi, pensum, to weigh. Tendo, tetendi, tensum, and tentum, to stretch out. Ostendo, ostendi, ostensum, and ostentum, to shew, or tell. Pedito, pepedi, peditum, to belch backward. Tundo, tundi, tunsum and tusum, to knock. Contundo, contūdi, eontūsum, to beat.

The Compounds of Composita à do do form dīdi in the formant dīdi, dītum: Preterperfect Tense, ut, edo, ēdīdi, ēdītum and dītum in the Supine.

Reddo, reddi, redditum, to restore. Perdo, perdidi, perditum, to lose. Abdo, abdidi, abditum, to hide. Obdo, obdidi, obditum, to thrust against. Dedo, dedidi, deditum, to yield. Condo, condidi, conditum, to build. Indo, indidi, inditum, to put in. Trado, tradidi, traditum, to deliver. Prodo, prodidi, proditum, to betray. Vendo, vendidi, venditum, to sell. Credo, credidi, creditum, to believe. Abscondo, abscondi, and abscondidi, absconsus, and absconditum, to hide.

Go.

Rego, rexi, rectum, to rule.

The Compounds of rego change re into ri, as,

Corrigo, correxi, correctum, to correct or amend. Porrigo, porrexi, porrectum, to stretch

of the Third Conjugation.

stretch, or reach out. Surgo, surrexi, surrectum, to arise. Pergo, perrexi, perrectum, to go or proceed. Tego, texi, tectum, to cover. Affligo, afflixi, afflictum, to beat the ground. Infligo, inflixi, inflictum, to cast violently or fling. Sugo, suxi, suctum, to suck. Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, to gird or inclose. Lingo, linxi, linctum, to lick. Tingo, tinxi, tinctum, to die color. Extinguo, extinxi, extinctum, to quench or put out any thing that burneth. Distinguo, distinxī, distinctum, to divide or separate. Plango, planxi, planctum, to lament. Ungō, unxi, unctum, to anoint. Jungo, junxi, junctum, to joyn. Emungo, emunxi, emunctum, to snuff a candle. Fingo, finxi, fictum, to counterfeit. Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to binde. Frigo, frixi, frictum, and frixum, to fry, or parch.

Figō, fixi, fictum, to fasten. Legō, legi, lectum, to read. Allēgo, allēgi, allectum, to ascribe or choose. Perlēgo, perlēgi, perlectum, to read over. Prælego, prælegi, prælectum, to read to, as a Master in expounding to his Scholars. Relēgo, relegi, relectum, to read again. Sublēgo, sublēgi, sublectum, to touch lightly.

Other Compounds of lego change le into li: as, Deligo, delegi, delectum, to choose. Seligo, selegi, selectum, to choose out. Eligo, elegi, electum, to elect. But Diligo, dilēxi, dilectum, to love; and negligo, neglexi, neglectum, to neglect; intelligo, intellexi, intellectum, to understand. Ago, egi, actum, to do. Perāgo, peregi, peractum, to perform.

Circumago circumegi circumactum, to turn or wind about. Satago sategi, to be busy about a thing; it wants the Supines. The rest of the Compounds of ago change a into i: as,

Abigo abegi abactum, to drive from. Adigo adegi adactum, to bring or drive to. Exigo exegi exactum, to expel or require. Subigo subegi subactum, to drive or bring under. Transigo transegi tranfactum, to drive thorough. But Cogo coegi coactum, to compel. Prodigigo prodegi, to spend riotously. Dego degi, to live; which two want the Supines. Frango fregi fractum, to break.

The Compounds of frango change fran into frin: as,

Adfringo, to break, as against a wall, adfringi, adfractum. Confringo confregi, confractum, to break or bruise. Defringo defregi defractum, to break off. Effringo effregi effractum, to break in pieces. Infringo infregi infractum, to tear. Perfringo perfregi perfractum, to break open. Præfringo præfregi præfractum, to break before. Refringo refregi refractum, to diminish. Diffringo diffregi diffractum, to break in pieces, to bruise.

Tango tetigi tactum, to touch.

The Compounds of tango change ta into ti: as,

Contingo contigi contactum, to reach to. Attingo

Attingo attigi attractum, to touch lightly.

Pango panxi, and pegi pactum, to fasten or plant. Expango exepi expansi expactum, to ordain or appoint. So Circumpango, to set all about. Depango, to plant or set. Oppango, to fasten or join. Repango, to fasten again. Compingo compegi compactum, to put together. Impingo impegi impactum, to dash or hit against, change pa into pi.

Pago pepigi pactum, to contract or make a bargain. Pungo pupugi and punxi punctum, to prick. Repungo repupugi and repunxi repunctum, to sting against. Compungo compunxi compunctum, to punish. Dispungo dispunxi dispunctum, to put out things written. Mergo merxi mersum, to drown. Tergo terxi tersum, to wipe or make clean. Spargo sparxi sparsum, to sprinkle. Præspargo præsparxi præsparsum, to strew or scatter before. Prospergo prosperxi prospersum, to sprinkle all about; with the rest of the Compounds change spargo into spergo, and sparsum into spersum: as,

Aspergo asperxi aspersum, to cast upon. Conspergo consperxi conspersum, to strew. Circumspargo circumspersi circumspersum, to cast about. Inspergo insperxi inspersum, to cast upon. Perspergo persperxi perspersum, to scatter all over. And Respergo Resperxi respersum, to cast water or other liquor.

Ho, xi, tum:

Traho traxi tractum, to draw. Attra-

ho

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

ho, attraxi, attractum, to draw to. Contraho, contraxi, contractum, to bargain. Detraho, detraxi, detractum, to draw from. Distraho, distraxi, distractum, to draw asunder. Extraho, extraxi, extractum, to draw out. Pertraho, pertraxi, pertractum, to draw by force. Retraho, retraxi, retractum, to draw back. Subtraho, subtraxi, subtractum, to withdraw. Protraho, protraxi, protractum, to draw forth with violence, also to prolong. Veho, vexi, vectum, to carry. Conveho, convexi, convectum, to carry by ship. Eveho, evexi, evectum, to carry aloft, &c.

Lo.

Colo, colui, cultum, to till. Occulo, ocului, oculum, to hide. Consulo, consului, consultum, to counsel. Molo, molui, molitum, to grind. Alo, alui, alitum, and altum, to nourish. Sallo, falli, falsum, to season with salt. Pello, pepuli, pulsus, to drive away. Vello, velli, and vulsi, vulsum, to pluck up by the roots. Avello, avelli, and avulsi, to pluck away. Revello, revelli, and revulsi, to pluck again, or pluck away clean. Fallo, fefelli, fallum, to deceive. Refello, refelli, to refute or reprove, lack **Supines**. Excello, excellui, excelsum, to excel. Præcello, præcellui, præcellum, to surpass, of the old Verb cello. Percello, perculi, perculsum, to strike. Antecello, antecellui, to excel or surpass, wants the **Supine**. Tollo, sustuli, sublatum, to lift or set up. Ex-

Sustol-

of the Third Conjugation:

Sustollo, sustuli, sublatum, to lift on high.

Mo.

Emo, emi, emtum, to buy. Coemo, coemi coemtum, to buy with others.

The rest of the Compounds of emo change e into i: ag,

Eximo, exemi, exemptum, to take away. Perimo, peremi, peremtum, to kill or destroy. Redimo, redemi, redemtum, to redeem or ransom. Como, comi, comtum, to comb or trim. Promo, promi, promtum, to draw. Sumo, sumi, sumtum, to take. Premo, pressi, pressum, to presse. The Compounds change pre into pri: ag, Apprimo, appressi, appressum, to presse together. Deprimo, depressi, depressum, to weigh down. Comprimo, compressi, compressum, to refrain. Exprimo, expressi, expressum, to expresse. Expressum, to wring forth or expresse. Imprimis, impressi, impressum, to mark. Opprimo, oppressi, oppressum, to oppresse. Perprimo, perpressi, perpressum, to presse hard. Reprimo, repressi, repressum, to represe. Supprimo, suppressi, suppressum, to suppress. Fremo, fremui, fremitum, to roar. Gemo, gemui, gemitum, to groan. Vomo, vomui, vomitum, to vomit.

No.

Sperno, spreui, spretum, to despise.

Sterno, stravi, stratum, to strew. Sino, fivi fitum

Concerno, to
see clearly.

fitum, to suffer. Lino levi litum, to besinear. Cerno, to see; wants the preterperfect tense and supines. But cerno, to enter upon or possess, crevi cretum, an old Verb. Decerno decrevi decretum, to judge. Discerno discrevi discretum, to know well and distinctly. Excerno excrevi excretum, to purge. Incerno increvi incretum, to try by sifting. Secerno secrevi secretum, to divide. Temno temsi temtum, and contemno contemsi contentum, to despise. Gigno genui genitum, to get. Pono posui positum, to put. Cano cecini cantum, to sing. Concino concinui concentum, to sing in one tune; and the rest of the Compounds which change ca into ci, make the preterperfect tense in ui, and the supines in centum: as, Incino incinui incentum, to faint a small voice. Percino percinui percentum, to continue in singing. Accino accinui accentum, to sing to. Præcino præcinui præcentum, to sing before or foretel. Recino recinui recentum, to sing again. Occino occinui occentum, to sing together, or against. Succino succinui succentum, to make a soft noise.

Po.

Carpo carpsi carptum, to crop. The Compounds of carpo change carpo into cerpo, and carptum into cerptum: as,

Decerpo decerpsi decerptum, to pull or pluck off. Excerpo excerpsi excerptum, to take and chuse. Discerpo discerpsi discerptum, to rent or tear in pieces. Concerpo con-

cerpsi.

cerpsi concerptum, to pull in pieces. Præcerpo præcerpsi præcerptum, to pick flowers. Serpo serpsi serptum, to creep. Repo, repsi reptum, to creep or go softly. Scalpo scalpsi scalptum, to scratch. Sculpo sculpsi sculptum, to carve or engrave in metal. Rum-po rupi ruptum, to break. Strepo strepui strepitum, to make a noise.

Quo.

Coquo coxi coctum, to seeth or boil. Relinquo reliqui relictum, to forsake.

Ro.

Sero sevi satum, to sow, plant or set. * Præse-
ro præsevi præsatum, to sow before the
time. The Compounds that give sevi in the
preterperfect tense, give situm in the su-
pines: as,

Consero consevi consitum, to plant or
sow together. Insero insevi insitum, to plant
or ingraft. Assero assevi assitum, to sow
or plant high. Circumsero circumsevi cir-
cumsitum, to plant about. Desero dese-
vi desitum, to sow or plant. Dissero sevi si-
tum, to sow abroad. Intersero intersevi
intersitum, to sow or plant between. Persero
persevi persitum, to sow all over.

Sero in another signification gives
serui, sertum.

Sero serui sertum, to approach, set by, or
lay in order. Assero asserui assertum, to af-
firm. Consero conserui consertum, to min-
gle.

* Resero, re-
sevi, resat-
um, to set
or plant a-
gain. Ita
subsero, to
set or sow
under a
thing.

Vita inferere aliquem, to bring a man to life.

gle. Desero, deserui, desertum, to leave. Infero, inferui, insertum, to bring into. Interfero, interferui, interfertum, to put between, to mingle. Dissero, disserui, dissertum, to dispute. Exero, exerui, exertum, to put forth. Gero, gessi, gestum, to bear. Verro, verri, versum, to draw or pull away. Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. Tero, trivi, tritum, to wear. Curro, cucurri, cursum, to run. Præcurro, præcurri, præcursum, to runne before. Excurro, excurri, excucurri, excursum, to run out. Procurro, procucurri, procursum, to run on. Decurro, decurri, and decucurri, to run down in hast. Accurro, accurri, accursum, to run to. Concurro, concurri, concursum, to run together. Discurro, discurri, discursum, to run up and down. Recurro, recurri, recursum, to run again; with the rest of the Compounds cast away the reduplication. Quæro, quæsi, quæsitum, to seek.

The Compounds of quæro change quæ into qui: as,

Acquiro, acquisivi, acquisitum, to obtain. Conquiro, conquisivi, conquisitum, to search for. Exquiro, exquisivi, exquisitum, to search or try out. Inquiro, inquisivi, inquisitum, to examine. Perquiro, perquisivi, perquisitum, to seek carefully. Requiro, requisivi, requisitum, to seek again. Fero, tuli, latum, to bear or suffer.

So.

Viso, visi, visum, to visit or seek after. Lacesso, lacesivi, lacesitum, to provoke or stir up.

stir up. Capeſſo, capeſſivi, and capeſſi, capeſſitum, to take in hand. Faceſſo faceſſivi and faceſſi faceſſitum, to goe about to doe. Arceſſo arceſſivi arceſſitum, to call for, to go to call. Depſo depſui depſitum, to knead dough. Pinſo pinſui pinſitum pinſum and piſtum, to bray in a mortar.

To.

Mitto miſi miſſum, to ſend. Verto verti verſum, to turn. Peto petivi petitum, to aſk. Meto meſſui meſſum, to reap or mow. Flecto flexi flexum, to bend. Necto nexi and nexui nexum, to knit. Plexo plexui, anciently, Plexi plexum to intangle. Pecto pexi and pexui pexum to kemb.

** Siſto ſtiti ſtatum, to make to ſtand, an Active.*

† Siſto, ſteti ſtatum, to ſtay, remain or appear, a Verb Neuter.

The Compounds of ſiſto, if they have the Supines, doe borrowe them of ſto: as,

Conſiſto conſtiti conſtitum, to ſtand faſt.

Reſiſto reſtiti reſtitum, to withſtand. Obſiſto obſtiti obſtitum, to reſiſt. Aſſiſto aſtiti aſtitum, to aſſiſt or ſtand by. Cir-

cumſiſto circumſtiti circumſtitum, to ſtand fac-

environ. Perſiſto perſtiti perſtitum, to a-

bide or continue. Deſiſto deſtiti deſtitum

to deſiſt or leave off. Exiſto extiti exti-

titum, to be or to appear. Inſiſto inſtiti in-

ſtitum, to inſiſt. Præſiſto præſtiti præſti-

tum, to ſtand before.

Sub-

** In Active nulla gignit compoſita.*

† A borrowed

pret. and Sup. of ſto.

Caret enim proprio pre-

terito atque ſupino.

Compoſita à ſiſto ſi ha-

bent ſupina ſtitum faci-

unt: ſed ſatius eſt ab

eorum uſu abſtinere.

Danes.

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

Subsisto substiti substitum, to abide or stay still.

Vo.

Solve solvi solutum, to loose. Volvo volvi volutum, to roll. Vivo vixi victum, to live. Lavo lavi lautum, sometimes lotum, to wash, unused in the third Conjugation. Diluo dilui dilutum, to rinse or make clean. Abluo abluui ablutum, to wash away or wash off. Eluo elui elutum, to wash out. Prolo proluui prolutum, to wash much.

Xo.

Texo texui textum, to weave. Attexo, attexui attextum, to knit or weave with. Extexo extexui extextum, to unweave.

Cio.

Facio feci factum, to do. Calfacio calfecui calfactum, to make hot or warm. Benefacio, benefeci benefactum, to do well. Malefacio malefeci malefactum, to do evil. Olfacio olfeci olfactum, to smell out a thing, to suspect. * Compendefacio compendefeci, to abridge. * Commonefacio commonefeci commonefactum, to warn. Floccifacio floccifeci floccifactum, to esteem of small price. Naucifacio naucifeci naucifactum, to esteem little worth. Satisfacio satisfeci satisfactum, to satisfy.

The rest of the Compounds of facio, not

com-

of the Third Conjugation,

pounded of a Noun, Verb or Adverb, change facio into ficio, and factum into fectum: ag, afficio, affeci, affectum, to affect. Conficio, confeci, confectum, to finish. Deficio, defeci, defectum, to lack or fail. Efficio, effeci, effectum, to effect. Inficio, infeci, infectum, to defile or spoil. Officio, offeci, offectum, to hurt. Perficio, perfeci, perfectum, to perform. Praeficio, praefeci, praefectum, to ordain or set over. Proficio, profeci, profectum, to profit. Reficio, refeci, refectum, to repair. Interficio, interfeci, interfectum, to kill. Sufficio, suffeci, suffectum, to suffice. Jacio, jeci, jactum, to cast.

The Compounds of jacio, change jacio into jicio, and jactum into jectum: ag, abjicio, abjeci, abjectum, to cast away. Adjicio, adjeci, adjectum, to cast or add to. Conjicio, conjeci, conjectum, to conjecture. Dejicio, dejeci, dejectum, to overthrow. Ejicio, ejeci, ejectum, to cast out. Circumjicio, circumjeci, circumjectum, to cast about. Interjicio, interjeci, interjectum, to mingle or cast between. Praejicio, praejeci, praectum, to sling before. Projicio, projeci, projectum, to sling away. Subjicio, subjeci, subjectum, to lay under. Superjicio, & superjacio, superjeci, superjectum & superjactum, to lay upon. Transjicio, tranjeci, transjectum, to cast or ferry over. Aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, to behold or look on, in like manner. Circumspicio, to look about. Conspicio, to behold. Despicio, to look down. Dispicio, to look about. Inspicio, to look on. Perspicio, to see plainly. Praespicio, to look before. Prospicio, to spy afar off. Respicio, to look back. Suspicio,

The Pret: Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

to look up, also to honour and suspect, are all Compounds of the old Verb Specio.

Allicio allexi allectum, to allure or entice. Illicio illexi illectum, to entice by allurements. Pellicio pellexi pellectum, to deceive with fair words. Perlicio perlexi perlectum, to allure or entice. But elicio elicui elicium, to draw by fair means. All Compounds of the unused Verb lacio.

Dio.

Fodio fodi fossum, to digge. Infodio infodi infossum, to inter.

Gio.

Fugio fugi fugitum, to fly. So confugio, to fly for help. Defugio, to neglect. Profugio, to wander, &c.

io.

Meio minxi mictum, to pisse, and commeo comminxi commictum, to pisse together.

Pio.

Capio cepi captum, to take. The Compounds of capio change capio into cipio, and captum into ceptum: as, Accipio accepi acceptum, to receive. Concipio concepi conceptum, to conceive. Decipio decepi deceptum, to deceive.

So

of the Third Conjugation.

So Excipio, to entertain. Incipio, to begin. Percipio, to perceive. Recipio, to receive. Præcipio, to command. Suscipio, to undertake. Occipio, to begin. Rapio rapui raptum, to snatch. The Compounds of rapio change rapio into ripio: and raptum into reptum: as, Arripio arripui arreptum to take by force. Abripio abripui abreptum to take from. So Corripio, to lay hold on. Diripio, to rob or spoil. Eripio, to snatch away. Præripio, to catch before. Proripio to withdraw ones self. Surripio, to steal or take away. Cupio cupivi cupitum, to desire.

Rio.

Pario peperi partum, to bring forth young. The Compounds of pario are of the fourth Conjugation, and change pa into pe.

Tio.

Quatio quassi quassum, which Preter Tense quassi is scarcely read.

The Compounds of quatio change qua into cu: as, Concutio concussi concussum to move, to brandish. Decutio decussi decussum, to strike off. Discutio discussi discussum, to remove or to examine. Excutio excussi excussum, to shake off. Incutio incussi incussum, to dash. Percutio percussi percussum, to smite. Recutio recussi recussum, to smite again. Succutio succussi succussum, to strike under.

Uo

U O.

Induo indui indutum, to cloath. Exuo exui exutum, to put off. Acuo, acui, acutum, to whet. Arguo argui argutum, to reprove. Imbuo imbui imbutum, to infect or to die cloth. Minuo minui minutum, to diminish. Suo sui sutum, to sew or stitch. Spuo, spui, spurum, to spit. Statuo statui statutum, to appoint.

The Compounds of statuo change sta into sti: as,

Astituo astitui astitutum, to place by. Constituo constitui constitutum, to determine. Destituo destitui destitutum, to forsake. Instituo institui institutum, to institute, begin, ordain, or set in good order. Prostituo prostitui prostitutum, to prostitute or set open to every man that cometh. Restituo restitui restitutum, to restore. Substituo substitui substitutum, to ordain in place of another. Sternuo sternui sternutum, to sneeze. Tribuo tribui tributum, to give. Ruo rui ruitum, to rush. Pluvo plui, and of old, pluvi plutum, to rain. Luo lui luitum, to pay, satisfy or purge; also to suffer punishment. Fluo fluxi fluxum, to flow. Struo struxi structum, to build.

Verbs

Verbs of the Third Conjugation lacking the Preterperfect Tense and Supines.

Præterito quacunq̃ carent, careantq̃ Supino.

1. **V**ergo, to decline or bow. Sido, to settle or sink. Attollo, to advance. Furo, to rage or be mad. Glisco, to grow or increase. Hisco, to gape. Fatisco, to chink, or chap. Vescor, to eat. Liquor, to melt. Reminiscor, to remember. Divortor, to turn aside. Prævertor, to get before or overtake. Ringor, to grin or shew the teeth.

Vergo, vergis, præterito caret, vergere, vergendi, vergendo, vergendum, sine Supinis, vergens, &c.

Divortor, diverteris vel divertere, sine præterito, diverti, &c.

2. Verbs ending in sco, lack the Preterperfect Tense and Supines, when they are derived of Nouns: as, Ditesco, to wax rich. SterileSCO, to wax barren. RepuerasCO, to wax a child again, &c.

Verbs in sco descending or coming of Verbs, borrow their Preterperfect Tense of the Verbs, from whence they come: as, Tepesco, to wax warm, hath the Preterperfect Tense tepui, from tepeo the Primitive Verb.

3. Passives whose Actives want Supines, have no Preterperfect Tense: as, metuor, to be afraid, because the Preterperfect Tense Passive is formed from the latter Supine Active.

Verbs

Verbs Deponents of the Third Conjugation.

Labor lapsus sum, to slide. Adipiscor ladeptus sum, to get. Comminiscor, commentus sum, to devise. Expergiscor experrectus sum, & expergitus, to awake. Irascor iratus sum, to be angry. Nascor natus sum, to be born. Nascor natus sum, to get. Obliviscor oblitus sum, to forget. Paciscor pactus sum, to make a bargain. Proficiscor profectus sum, to goe forward. Ulciscor ultus sum, to revenge. Fungor, functus sum, to exercise an office or duty. Fruor fructus sum, & fruitus sum, to enjoy. Loquor, loquutus sum, to speak. Sequor, sequutus sum, to follow. Queror, questus sum, to complain. Amplector amplexus sum, to embrace. Complector complexus sum, to comprehend or maintain. Revertor reversus sum, to return. Nitor nixus & nixus sum, to endeavour. Utor usus sum, to use. Morior mortuus sum, to die. Patior passus sum, to suffer. Gradior gressus sum, to go by steps. Retrogradior, to recoil or to return back.

The Compounds of Gradior change gra into gre: as,

Aggredior aggressus sum, to assail. Circumgredior circumgressus sum, to go about. Congredior, to encounter. Digredior, to go aside. Egredior, to go forth. Ingredior, to go in. Prægradior, to go before, also to

pass

passé by. Progredior, to proceed. Regredior, to go back. Suggredior, to go by stealth. Tuor tuitus sum, to look or behold. Orior ortus sum, to arise.

Orior hath the second person singular in the Present Indicative of the third and fourth Conjugation and the Infinitive Mood, atwapes of the fourth, the rest of the Terminations follow the third Conjugation.

Orior orëris or orëre and oriris or orire ortus sum vel fui, oriri oriendi oriendo oriendum, ortus oriens oriturus orien-

pus. Potior potitus sum, to obtain, is usual in the fourth Conjugation, though some Terminations are also of the third: as, potitur and potitur.

Potior potiris or potire, potitus sum or potitus fui, potiri potiendi potiendo potiendum potitum potitu potiens potiturus potitus potiendus: Eido sisus sum, to trust or to believe.

These Verbs seldom or never retain the Supine.

Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba Supinum.

Lambo lambi, to lick. Scabo scabi, to scratch or claw. Disco didici, to learn. Posco poposci, to require. Psallo psalli, to sing. Volo volui, to will. Nolo nolui, to nil. Malo malui, to be more willing. Strido stridi, to crash. Rudo, rudi, to bray like an ass. Ango anxii, to trouble. Clango claxii, to sound a trumpet.

L

Ningo.

Tuor cum
compositis
tertiæ Con-
jugationis
antiquorum
cujus loco
successit
tuor cum
suis compo-
sitis ter-
tiæ Con-
jugationis.
Danes.

Ningo ninxi, to snow. Tremo tremui, to tremble. Sterto stertui, to snort. Incesso incesso, to invade. Sapio sapui and Sapivi, to be wise, whose Compounds change *sa* into *si*: as, Desipio desipui, to be unwise. Insuper insuper, to deat. Resipio resipui, to be wise again. Renuo renui, to refuse. Annuo annui, to grant unto. Ingruo ingruui, to invade. Congruo congrui, to agree. Respuo respui, to refuse. Metuo, metui, to fear.

In the Fourth Conjugation:

IO, *as*, audio, is, *as*, audis, in the Present Tense, formeth the Preterperfect Tense in *ivi*, and Supine in *itum*: *as*, audiui, auditum.

Eo *ivi* itum, to go. Adeo ad*ivi* ad*itum*, to go or come to. Intereo inter*ivi* inter*itum*, to die utterly. Exeo ex*ivi* ex*itum*, to go out. Prodeo prod*ivi* and prod*itum*, to go forth. Redeo red*ivi* and red*itum*, to return. Obeo ob*ivi* ob*itum*, to go about. Subeo sub*ivi* and sub*itum*, to enter or go under. Ambio amb*ivi* amb*itum*, to compass about. Cio civi citum, to provoke or move.

Venio, to come; sentio, to think; are expected.

IO, is, in present präteritum format in *ivi*, & supinum in *itum*: ut, audio audiui auditum.

Excipiuntur venio veni ventum; sentio sensi sensum.

¶ 160

Atto vincio vinxi vinctum, to bind. Fulcio fulsi fultum, to underprop. Sepio sepsi septum, to hedge. Haurio hausi haustum, to draw. Sarcio sarsi sartum, to patch or amend. Farcio farsi fartum, to stuff. Infarcio infarsi infartum, to fill or pour in. The other Compounds whereof change *sa* into *ser*: as, Refercio referfi refertum, to fill hard. Differcio differfi differtum, to fill. Impertio impertivi impartitum, and impartio impartivi impartitum, to bestow. Dispertio, to give part to one, and part to another, Dispertivi dispartitum.

Bipertio bipertivi bipertitum, to part in two parts. Quadripertio quadripertivi quadripartitum, to part into four parts. Sancio sanxi sanctum, and sometimes Sancivi sanctum, to establish. Salio salii and salui, saltum, to leap.

The Compounds of salio change *sa* into *si*: as,

Exilio exilui, and exilii exultum, to leap out hastily. Dissilio dissilui, and dissilii dissultum, to leap down from off a place, or leap hither and thither. Insilio insilui, and insilii insulium, to leap upon. Profilio profilui, and profilii, to stream forth. Absilio absilui and absilii, to leap from, which two want Supines. Desilio desilii, and desilui desultum, to leap down. So assilio, to leap upon. Confilio, to leap together. Præfilio, to jump before. Refilio, to leap back. Subfilio, to leap or dance. Superfilio, to leap upon. Transilio, to leap over. Salio salivi saltum, to season with salt. Punio punii and punitus sum, to punish. Amicio am-

Of the Fourth Conjugation.

cui, and sometimes amicivi and amixi amicum, to cloath. Sepelio sepilivi sepultum, to bury. Raucio rausi rausum, to be hoarse. Singultio singultivi singultum, to sob. Aperio aperui apertum, to open. Operio operui opertum, to cover. Comperio comperi compertum, to find out by trial. Reperio reperi repertum, to find by adventure.

Verbs Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation.

Experior expertus sum, to try. Opperior oppertus sum, to tarry. Comperior, to know for a surety, by trial. Comperitus, found out, proved, known assuredly. Assentior assensus sum, to assent, accord or agree with. Metior mensus sum, to measure. Ordior orsus sum, to begin. Fio, to be made, to become or grow, wants the Preterperfect Tense, for factus sum is of the old Verb facior.

Ferio, to smite, wants Preterperfect tense and Supines.

Verbs ending in urio called Meditatives, want the Preterperfect Tense and Supines. Except parturio parturivi, to travel of child-birth. Esurio esurivi, to be an hungry.

Gestio gestivi, to leap for joy, wants the Supine; and Veneo, to be sold; venii, for venum, to be sold, is a Noun.

Verbs

Legitur veno, Tac. l. 13. deinde venio componitur a suo supino, cum hoc ab eo derivetur. Idem.

Verbs defective.

Verbs Defective:

1. Aio, to say or affirm.

Present Tense Indicative.

Sing.	{	1	Aio, I say.	}	Plur.	{	3	Aiunt, they say.
		2	Ais, thou sayest.					
		3	Ait, he saith.					

Imperfect Tense Indicative.

Sing.	{	1	Aiebam, I said or did say.
		2	Aiebas, thou saidst or didst say.
		3	Aiebat, he said or did say.
Plur.	{	1	Aiebamus, we said.
		2	Aiebatis, yee said.
		3	Aiebant, they said.

Present Subjunctive.

Sing.	{	2	Aias, thou sayest.	}	Plur.	{	3	Aiatis, ye say.
		3	Aiat, he saith.					3

A Participle of the Present Tense.

Aiens, saying.

2. Inquam, I say.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{	1	Inquam, I say.
		2	Inquis, thou sayest.
		3	Inquit, he saith.
Plur.	{	1	Inquimus, we say.
		2	Inquitis, yee say.
		3	Inquiunt, they say.

L 3

Imper-

Verbs Defectives:

8. *Apagē, fie, fie away.*

Apagē illam hostilitatem, away with that hostility.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. 2 Apagē. Plur. Apagite, fie away.

9. *Cedo, say, give or reach forth.*

Imperative Mood.

Sing. 2 Cedo. Plur. 2 Cedite or certe. Cedo manum, give me thy hand. Cedo aquam manibus, give me water for my hands. Cedo coram ipso, say it to his face.

10. *In fit, he began, or he said.*11. *Odi, I hate, or I have hated.*

Cœpi, I have begun or taken in hand. Memini, to call to mind, or to remember, have the Preterperfect, and all Tenses which descend of the Preterperfect Tense: ag,

Odij, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.

Cœpij, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.

Meminij, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.

Imperative Mood. Sing. 2 Memento, remember. Plur. Mementote, remember ye.

12. *Ovo, to rejoice with noise:*

Indic. 3 Ovat, he rejoiceth, and the Participle ovans are only in use.

13. Dor

Verbs Defectives.

13.

Dor of do, and for the first persons in the Present Indicative; neither der nor fer, the first persons in the Subjunctive Mood, are in use. But we read in the Compounds of for. effer: ag, Quid sit quod horres effer, Sen. Trag. Thier. act. 4. ve. 537.

Verbs derived, are,

1. *Inchoatives, ending in sco: ag, ingemisco.*
2. *Frequentatives, in to, so, xo, co, tor.*
3. *Desideratives or Meditatives in urio.*
4. *Diminutives, in illo and isso.*
5. *Imitatives, in isso or. Bacchor.*

Finis Libri Quarti.

L 5 THE



THE FIFTH BOOK.

Syntaxis, or the right composition or putting together of the parts of Speech amongst themselves, is either in Concord, or Government.

Concord is twofold:

- 1 Plain.
- 2 Figurative.

Plain Concord.

Rule 1.

A Verb Personall **V**erbum Personale cohaeret, Nominative case in cum Noninativo number and person: numero & personâ.
as,

* Labor omnia * vincit, labour overcometh all things.

Auris bona esto, * quæ libenter * audit utilia, it is a good ear which willingly heareth things profitable.

Observations.

Read the Observations perfectly, and examine as time will permit some of them with which would be examined by parsing.

1 The little star betwixt which words have in them the vertue of the Rule, them with which would be examined by parsing.

2 Learn

2 Learn the art to find out the Verb in the sentence by the English;

1. Of the Persons, I, thou, he, we, yee, they; or,

2. Of signs of the Tenses, Li. i. p. 46, 47.

For example: Labour overcometh all things, that ending in eth, sheweth the word overcometh, to be the Verb; and in the other sentence heareth, eth a sign of the Present Tense Active.

3. The Nominative case is found by the answer to the question, who or what? whether it come before the Verb, (as it usually doth) or be set after the verb, as it is sometimes (videl.) 1. When the verb is of the Imperative Mood. 2. When a question is asked: as, said he so? 3. When the signe (it) or (there) cometh before the Verb: as, auris bona est, it is a good ear, or an ear is good.

4. By agreement in number understand, that if the Nominative case be of the singular number, the verb must be of the singular number; but if plural, the verb must be plural.

To agree in person is, if the Nominative case be of the first person, the verb must be of the first person; if of the second or of the third, the verb must be of the same person.

5. A Verb Impersonal hath no Nominative case before it in the Latine, though it sometimes seems to have in the English: as, I must, me oportet. Thou maist, tibi licet.

The

The Adjective agreeeth with the Substantive, in Gender, Number, and Case, be it a Noun Adjective, Pronoun, or Participle.

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, Genere, Numero & casu, consentit: ut, as.

* Neglectis * urenda * fix in nascitur
* agris. Fearnbrake to be burnt, groweth in fields, lightly regarded or untilled.

* Verus * amor, * nullo * fuco, verum amat, True love, loveth truth without painting.

Observations:

To finde which word is a Substantive, note that all things are Noun Substantives: as, a Book, a hat, &c. Other notes you have, l. 1. p. 2. but in this Rule whatsoever answereth to the question who, or what? is for the Substantive to the Adjective: for an Adjective put in the Neuter Gender will in all respects supply the place of a Substantive: as in Concord Figurative, Rule 2. and Rule 3.

The Adjective agreeeth in Gender, Number and Case, that is, If the Substantive be of the Masculine Gender, the Adjective must be Masculine. If the Substantive be Feminine, the Adjective must be Feminine. If Neuter, the Adjective must be Neuter.

2. If the Substantive be of the singular number, the Adjective must be singular; but if of the plural, it must be plural.

3. To

3. To agree in Case, the Adjective must be the same Case with the Substantive: as, Neglectis agris, the Ablative case, the Plural Number, and Masculine Gender.

Canse the scholar to decline the Substantive and Adjective together through all cases, keeping the gender.

Urenda filix, the Nominative case, the Singular Number, and Feminine Gender,

Genere, & Numero. Rule 3;

The Relative qui agreeeth with the Substantive going before it, in Gender and in Number.

Relativum Qui cum Substantivo Antecedente, convenit in Genere, & Numero. Rule 3;

* Foelix * qui potuit boni fontem videre lucidum; he is happy which could goe to see the clear Fountain of goodnesse.

Home.

Nemo est qui non velit pacem, sed non omnes volunt operari justitiam; There is no man who willeth not peace; but all will not work righteousness.

If a Nominative case be put between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be such case as the Verb, or following word requireth.

Si Nominativus Relativo & verbo interponatur, Relativum, ejus erit casus, quem verbum sequens postulat.

Rule 4;

* Quos * amamus, nunquam morsum petimus, whom we love, wee never assault or smite with backbiting or slander.

Gratia

Gratia ab officio * quod * mora * tardat abest, *Thanks is wanting from that good turn which lingring delayeth.* Cui benedixit unquam bono? *What good man hath he at any time said well of?*

Quis, *who* : qualis, *of what sort* : quantus, *how much* : quot, *how many* : quotus, *of what number* : uter, *which, or whether of the two*, come under the same rule with the Relative.

Quis, qualis, quantus, quot, quotus, uter, &c. rationem eandem cum Relativo subeunt.

Rule 5.

* Quot * amicos, * quotque * inimicos * habeas res adversæ docent. *Adversity teacheth how many friends, and how many enemies thou hast.*

Observations:

1. The Relative by an Hellenism or Greek propriety of speech, is put sometimes in the same case with the Antecedent Substantive: as, Cum scribas, aliquid * eorum * quorum consuevisse gaudeo.

2. Not only the Relative but the Substantive joined with it, belongeth to Rule 4. as, Quem librum legis? Quantam iram puras? Tantas blasphemias evomit, quantas repetere & scribere extorresco, quas copias colligimus, refundimus, *what riches?* &c.

3. The way to finde upon which word the Relative Depends, is, 1. By repeating

ring the Antecedent Substantive. 2. By putting for the Relative hic, hæc, hoc, and repeating it with the Substantive. 3. Join the words together according to order of Speech, and you shall easily finde the word on which it both depend: as,

Utere virtute, quâ nihil est melius quâ virtute, changed thus, hæc virtute; ordered thus, nihil est melius hæc virtute, whereby it appears quâ Dependeth on melius, and trucidatis quos placitum esset, Suet. li. 1. sec. 9.

4. The Antecedent Substantive is sometimes repeated with the Relative: as, diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo, *know that there is not a day, in which day,* &c. Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas, *that is, fabulæ quas fabulas fecisset,* &c.

A Substantive will agree with a Substantive of the same thing or person in case: as, an, the, being, or no

sign coming next after the latter of two Substantives, is a sign of apposition.

Eruitur * ferrum * instrumentum, * aurum * precium sceleris. *Iron the instrument, Gold the price, or reward of wickednesse, is digged out.*

Observations.

Grammarians call this agreement of Sub-

Substantivum cum Rule 6. Substantivo ejusdem rei aut personæ conveniet casu.

Concord Plain.

Substantive with **S**ubstantive, *Apposition* and *Epexgesis*: to which there belongeth eight *Observations*.

1. That the latter **S**ubstantive agreeth with the former in number also, unless one of the **S**ubstantives be a **C**ollective, that is, a **N**oun in the singular number which signifieth a plural: as, *turba luxuriosa *proci.

2. If the latter of the two **S**ubstantives be moveable, that is, admit of a *Masculine Termination* and *Fœminine*: as, Magister, Magistra, herus, hera, then the latter **S**ubstantive shall be of the same **G**ender also with the former: as, *venter *magister artis, the belly-master of art. Et genus & formam *Regina *pecunia donat.

3. If the former **S**ubstantive be the *Epicene*, or *Neuter Gender*, then the latter if it be changeable is the *Masculine*: as, *Aquila *Rex avium, an Eagle the King of Birds. *Tempus stultorum *magister, &c. Time a teacher of fools.

4. If the latter **S**ubstantive be unchangeable, then there is no respect had to the **G**ender: as, *vultus *imago animi: Magnum *pauperies *opprobrium: jubet quidvis facere & pati,

5. Two or more singulars are accounted for a plural: as, *odium & *metus pessimi ad diurnitatem *custodes.

6. If the first of the two **S**ubstantives signifies a thing with life, the **A**djective or **V**erb agreeth with it: as, *Tulliola *deliciæ nostræ *flagitat.

7. If

Concord Figurative.

7. If both the **S**ubstantives be of things without life, the **V**erb or **A**djective agreeth with the latter **S**ubstantive: as, Fama malum quo non aliud velocius ullum.

Lastly, if one of the **S**ubstantives be the name of a place, the **A**djective or **V**erb agreeth with the common **N**oun, rather than the **S**ubstantive proper. *Ludos *Consualia simulavit ad *quos.

If the two **S**ubstantives belonging to this rule differ in case, it is rather to be observed than imitated: as, In opido Antiochiæ.

Concord Figurative.

Ellipsis:

The *Nominatives*
Ego, I: tu, thou:
ille, hee: nos, wee:
vos, yee: illi, they:
homines, men: are
very seldom expressed,
except to put difference
or to speak something
more earnestly.

Nominativi ego, Rule 1.
tu, ille, nos,
vos, illi, homines
raro exprimuntur,
nisi ad distinguendum,
aut vehementius aliquid efferendum.

Quicquid dicunt laudo; id rursus si negant: laudo id quoque. I commend whatsoever men say. If again they deny, I also praise that.

Etsi

Et si * ego (Domine Jesu) commisi unde me damnare potes; * tu non amisisti unde servare soles. Although (O Lord Jesus) I have committed whereby thou maist condemn me, yet thou hast not lost, whereby thou art wont to save.

Observations.

All sentences or single words, as dicunt, ferunt, aiunt, &c. wherein some word is understood or left out, may be referred to this rule for Ellipsis, signifying a leaving out: as, the Verb substant. *Sunt* often, and in tonat, pluit, ningit, it thundreth, raineth, snoweth, understand Deus: as, Deus tonat, or coelum, or aer: again, lucebit, diescit, it is bright, it is day; that is, dies oritur, the day springs, and in Proverbial speeches: as, fortuna fortes, understand adjuvat, and ad * constitutum Paulo ante vespere veniebam, i. e. * locam.

Enallage, or Immutation.

Rule 2.

1. Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mood. 2. An Adverb. 3. A part of the sentence. 4. Or a word put artificially (i. e.) for it self, supplieth or taketh the place of the Nominative case or Substantive.

Aliquando verbum infinitum, adverbium membrum orationis, aut dictio artificialiter posita supplet locum Nominativi aut Substantivi.

* Velle

* Velle * sum cuique * est, nec veto vivitur uno, his own will is to every one, or each hath his own will, nor doe men live with one desire.

Observations.

1. Words put in stead of a Nominative case, or Substantive, are esteemed as Neuters, of the third person; wherefore sum is the Neuter Gender, and est the third person; and according to the old rule, 2 clauses or more require a plur. as, 1. Tu multum dormis, 2. Et saepe potas, * quæ ambo * sunt corpori inimica, thou sleepest much, and drinkest often, both which things are naught for the body. Valla saith, that the Infinitive Mood is not put for a Noun, except in the Nominative and Accusative case. Non dicimus, pro posse nico &c.

Adjectives put absolutely, (i. e.) without Substantives, supply or take the place of a Substantive, of which many are put in the Neuter Gender.

Adjectiva absolute, sine Substantivis posita, suppleunt locum Substantivi e quibus multa redundunt in Neutro Genere. Rule 2.

* Amicus certus, in re incerta cernitur, a sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

Omnia sunt hominum tenui pendencia filo. All things of men are hanging on a slender thred, or mans state or condition, is easily changed or broken. Obser-

Observations.

1. *The Adjective in the Masculine Gender hath homo, or man: as, Rusticus for Rusticus homo: Amicus for Amicus homo.*

2. *The Adjective in the Neuter Gender hath res or negotium. opus or quid, or quiddam understood, Vid. li. i. pa. 27. as, omnia for omnes res, or omnia negotia, opera, &c.*

Rule 4.

Substantives are sometimes used for Adjectives. Substantiva quandoque pro Adjectivis usurpantur.

Heroas sensus for Heroicos sensus, noble or heroical arguments, reasons or vessels. Marem strepitum for masculinum strepitum, a manly noise. Juvenes jocos for juveniles jocos, youthful sports, &c.

Zeugma.

Rule 5.

When a Verb answereth to two or more Nominative cases. Also an Adjective to many Substantives, coupled together with a Conjunction or a comma, they agree with the nearer expressly or manifestly, with the other or rest by addition.

Quum verbum duobus aut pluribus nominativis respondet. Adjectivum itē pluribus substantivis conjunctione aut commate nexis: cum viciniore conveniunt expresse, cum altero vel reliquis per supplimentum.

Ut

*Ut * probus absentes amicos suā operā, itā * improbus suā incuriā prosequitur, as an honest man defends his absent friends; so a dishonest man forsakes (them.)*

In comparison the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Domin. case or Substantive farther off: as, Nihilominus ego quam vos Christum amantes diligo.

An Apposite will agree with the more worthy Supposite. Appositum cum Rule 6. digniore supposito Danes. quadrabit.

*Neque * ego, neque * tu * fecimus hoc &c. Neither I, nor you have done this.*

Observations.

1. *By Apposite, is understood a Verb or Adjective; and by Supposite understand a Dominative case or Substantive, as the Apposite or Verb fecimus agreeth with the more worthy Supposite or Dominative case Ego.*

2. *The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter in things having life: as, Mars venusque capti.*

3. *The Neuter Gender is most worthy in things without life, of what Gender soever the Substantive be: as, divitiæ, decus, & gloria in oculis sita sunt. Riches, honour and glory, are set before you.*

Quorum

Quorum nomina & virtutes sunt æque clara, yet sometimes when the suppositives are all Masculine or all Feminine, the apposite is also Masculine or Feminine. *Linea & *superficies *dividua sunt.

Sometimes the apposite agreeth with the nearer Masculine or Feminine, and not with the Neuter: as, Concilia *coetusque hominum jure *sociati.

Sometimes also with the supposite farthest off: *Amor tuus ac iudicium dome, utrum mihi plus dignitatis in perpetuum an voluptatis quotidie sit *allaturus, non facile dixerim.

4. The first Person is more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Syllepsis.

Rule 7.
Danes.

Two or more singulars are accounted for a plural.

Duo vel plura singularia habentur pro plurali.

Nulla fors longa, *dolor, ac *voluptas invicem *cedunt, No condition (is) continual, grief and pleasure by course give place.

Observations.

By singulars understand Nominative cases: as, dolor and voluptas, which have cedunt, a Verb plural.

2. Two or more Substantives singular, which will have an Adjective plural: as, Stolidus *amator & liber *captivus, sunt avi, inclusæ *similes. *Pater & *Mater *religiosi.

1. Some-

1. Sometimes singulars are content with a singular: Si *quercus & *ilex multâ fruge pecus, multâ dominum *juvet umbrâ. Hor. lib. 1. Ep. 16.

Meretrix & materfamilias erat unâ in domo.

2. When the Preposition cum is put in stead of the Conjunction Copulative, it is usually singular: as, *Occisus *est *cum *liberis *Marcus Fulvius consularis, for Marcus & liberi occisi sunt.

3. If a Conjunction disjunctive come between the singulars, the Verb may be singular: as, *Lectulus *aut me *porticus excepit, Hor. Sat. 4.

Non vides, si quando militum animos vel prædæ promissæ *magnitudo; *vel formidata victoris *crudelitas; *vel opprobriatæ *pudor ignaviæ; *vel laudum denique *cupido *stimulat?

Prolepsis is when a plural word containing the whole, is afterward divided into parts in the singular number, and the Verb agreeth with the whole, not with the parts, but by Syllepsis: as, *Curemus æquam uterque partem, *tu alterum, *ego item alterum; Let us both look unto his part alike, thou the one (son) I likewise the other. Curemus, the plural, doth not agree with tu and ego, &c. the parts, but by Rule 7. yet are understood to the parts: as, tu, cura ego curabo. Prolepsis is implicate, when one of the parts is understood: as, Alter in alterius iacantes, lumina vultum, quærebant taciti noster ubi esset

Concord Figurative.

esset amor : *The one casting his eyes on the face of the other, holding his peace, did seek where our love should be.* It may be resolved thus : *Utrique jactantes lumina in alterius vultum, alterjactans lumina in alterius & alter in alterius vultum quærebant, where the Verb quærebant, and the Participle jactantes are plural. For that two or more clauses singular, are accounted for a plural.*

Synthesis.

Rule 8.

Synthesis, is the composition, or ordering of words agreeing in sense, not in word.

Synthesis est vocum structura congrua sensu, non voce.

Danes,

A Noun of multitude singular, is sometimes joined to a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural.

Nomen multitudinis singulare, quandoque appposito jungitur plurali.

Pars abiire, uterque deluduntur dolis : *Part are gone ; both are mocked with deceit.*

Observations.

1. By a Noun of multitude understand a Noun in the singular number comprehending a plural : as, 1. Gens, turba, pars, vulgus, populus.

2. Partitives singular joined to a plural, belong to this rule : as, Quis, quisq; aliquis, neuter, uter, omnis cunctis, alter, solus, quidam reliquus, uterque valemus ;
both

Construction of the Nom. case.

both are in good health. Alius, alium, expectate, one tarry for another. Aperite aliquis ostium, some body open the dore.

3. Substantives put for Adjectives : as, ubi illic scelus est, for sceleratus or sceleratus.

4. When homines, men, is understood, or some other Substantive, as cives, &c. which the sense will easily suggest : as, duo millia crucibus affixi understand homines.

1. Verbs Substantives.

1. Verba Substantiva. Rule 1.

2. Verbs Passives.

2. Passiva.

3. Verbs Neuters, of demeanour or behaviour, passe over into a Nominative case with

3. Et verba gestus Neutra in Nominativum transcunt:

a, or an, or no sign, or the before it : as, Nemo minus religiosus, quam qui sibi videtur religiosus, No man is lesse religious then he who seems to himself religious.

Observations.

To understand this rule : note,

1. Verbs Substantives are, sum, I am; existo, to be ; forem, I might or should be, and fio, I am made or become.

2. Verbs Passives : as, dicor, I am said, And Audio for vocor. vocor, I am called : and well nigh all Verbs Passives, except these four, rogor, I am asked : exoror, I am intreated : poscor, I am required : doceor, I am taught, which retain the Accusative case of the thing : as, rogantur sententiam. M 3. Verbs

Construction of the Nom. case.

3. Verbs of Gesture, or behaviour: *as, eo, I goe: incedo, I walk: venio, I come: cubo, I lie down: sedeo, I sit: evado, to prove or become: dormio, to sleep: maneo, to tarry, habe a Nominative case after them, with, a, or an: as, puer sum, I am * a boy: forem discipulus, I might be * a scholar: nemo nascitur artifex, no man is born * an artist.*

4. All Verbs admit of a Nominative case after them, of an Adjective, especially if it be put adverbially; and then before the case of the Adjective the sign is lost. *Scribo epistolas rarissimus for rarissime, I write Letters very seldom: and often before the case of Substantives: as, multi videntur veri cultores Dei, many seem true worshippers of God.*

5. The, also after sum, and Verbs of calling: *as, dicor appellor, is a sign of the Nominative case: as, tu vir ille es, thou art * the man: Deus appellatur Deus pacis, God is called * the God of peace.*

6. The Participles of Verbs belonging to this rule, are in like manner construed: *factus habirus, &c. as, facta videbor a nus.*

7. Verbs Substantives, and the Participles of Verbs of calling and esteeming: also *for* and the Relative *qui*, sometimes agree with the latter supposite, instead of the former. Note this rather than use it: *as,*

Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est; or dicendus, usually. Not every error is to be called folly.

En

Construction of the Nom. case. 243

En, behold! and En & ecce, No. Rule 2. ecce, behold! re-minativum aut Acquire a Nominative cufativum adsciscunt. or an Accusative case.

*Audiat hæc tantum, vel qui venit, * ecce * Palæmon, Only at least let him that comes, hear these. Behold, Palæmon.*

Observations:

1. In the Nominatives *est* is understood: *as, ecce agnus Dei, for ecce est, &c.*

2. In Accusatives, *video* is understood: *as, ecce alterum for ecce video alterum.*

3. The Dative case *tibi*, is oftentimes added: *ecce tibi ejusmodi sortitio, Behold a lotting of the same sort for thee.*

*O an(Interjection) O exultantis, col- Rule 32
of rejoycing, of prai- laudantis, aut etiam
sing, and also of scor- deridentis, & heu
ning, or mocking, and Nominativo præpo-
heu are put before a nuntur.
Nominative case.*

O magnus post hæc inimicis risus! O great laughter for our enemies hereafter! Heu pietas, heu prisca fides! O the godlinesse! O the ancient fidelity!

for the Voc. and Accus. after O, see Rule 5. p. 300. &c.

*A Substantive or an Substantivum aut Rule 4.
Adjective put Sub- Adjectivum Sub-
stantively, governs a stantive positum
Genitive case of a di- regit Genitivum di-
vers thing. versare.*

2

of,

Construction of the Nom. case.

Of, before the latter of two Substantives, is a sign of the Genitive case.

Major *famæ *firis est quam virtutis, there is a greater thirst of glory, than of virtue. Illius ergo venimus, we come for his sake.

Observations.

This Rule is divided into two parts,
1. Substantives. 2. Adjectives put Substantively.

Substantives.

1. The latter of two Substantives having to before it is a Dative.

Urbi pater est urbiq; Maritus, he is a Father to the City, a husband to the City. See Rule 1. p. 271.

2. When the latter Substantive signifies the matter of the former, then it is made in Latine by an Adjective Possessive, derived of the latter Substantive. Annulus æneus, a brasse ring, or an Ablative case with ex, after a Noun beginning with a vowel or consonant: as, Annulus ex auro, ex marmore: but after a Verb the matter is put with e or ex, as, factum est ex lapide or factum est è lapide.

3. When the latter Substantive is the proper name of a place, the Genitive case is changed into an Adjective, derived of the latter Substantive: as, a London Merchant, or Merchant of London, Mercator Londinensis. Chaldaeam, Arabicam, Punicam, Æthiopicam, Persicam, Syriacam, Medicam edicere linguam.

4. If

Construction of the Gen. case.

4. If the former Substantive signifies the possessor of a place, then the latter Substantive is put in the Genitive case: as,

Rex Angliæ, } The Genitive of the possessor is elegantly changed into the Adjective possessive: as, patris domus, paterna domus.

5. If the latter Substantive signifying the name of a place, be an Appellative, or common Noun, it is made into Latine either by the Adjective possessive, or Genitive case: as, mos patriæ, or mos patrius.

6. Proper names of men, are usually turned into Adjectives, derived of them, and joyned to Substantives common: as, Horatiano verbo libenter utimur. Tullianus Sermo. Socrateo melle depluit totus. Catoniana sententia. Demosthenica oratio. Homericum carmen. Euripideum carmen. Versus Ennianus. Fons Pegaseus, and Osorum lingua. Gallica vox.

7. Some Substantives have a Genitive or Ablative with de: as,

Misericordia, sollicitudo, pudor, certamen, opinio, mentio: as, certamen gloriæ, or de gloria. Also of, after locutio, colloquium, loquela, is made by de.

M. Bird.

8. Of, before the subject of a book, may be Englished concerning: as,

Ovid; of the Art of loving, and is made by de, and of, before the place or pedigree of a man, is made by de, è, ex.

M 3

Con-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Concerning Adjectives, observe,

1. Adjectives put Substantively are, hoc temporis, id temporis: so multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, summum, extremum, dimidium, ultimum.

2. Adjectives put Substantively, have not the Genitive case of Adjectives of the Third Declension after them; but of the second we must not say, aliquid utilis, but aliquid commodi; nor aliquid suavis, but aliquid jucundi, and aliquid boni.

3. Adjectives of quality: as, qualis talis are not put Substantively.

4. Adjectives of quantity put Substantively, have a Genitive case after them of all Nouns Substantives declined; but of Adjectives only of the second Declension as aforesaid: as, quantum pecuniæ, &c. and of the singular number.

5. Where you read Adjectives of the second or third Declension in the plural number put Substantively with a Genitive case, they are examples not to be imitated, but permitted to Poets and Historians: as, Telluris opera, opaca locorum, amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli, inania famæ.

6. for {
1. Sufficiens we use satis: as, satis periculi.
 2. Majus, we use plus: as, plus periculi.
 3. Nullum, we use nihil: as, nihil periculi.
 4. Magnum, we use multum: as, multum periculi.
 5. Parvum, we use parum: as, parum periculi.
 7. Me-

Construction of the Gen. case.

7. Medium and dimidium, are used Substantively, and Adjectively: as, dimidium facti, dimidia pecunia, and dimidium pecuniæ, in medio coelo, and in medio coeli, in the midst of the Heaven.

Pronoun.

8. These Pronouns Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester, are used in Possession; est liber meus, it is my book.

But mei the Gen. of ego: tui the Gen. of tu: sui the Pronoun Substantive; also nostri and vestri Genitives plural of nos and vos, are used when passion is signified, and in which others are active: for example,

Favor noster, is that favour which is in us towards others: but favor nostri, is that favour which others have to us: cura mea, is my care: cura mei, is another's care of me: pars tua, is that part which is due to thee: but pars tui, that is a part of thee, be it hand, foot, body, soul, &c. imago nostra, that is the image which we possess: but imago nostri, that is the image which representeth us.

9. Sui, and suus, sua, suum, are called Reciprocals, because they look back to the Nominative case of the foregoing Verb. * Petrus nimium admiratur *se, parcit erroribus *suis, Peter loveth himself too well, &c.

1. If suus have respect to the case that cometh after the Verb, it for the most part signifieth proprius, proper, and may be turned according to the order aforesaid: as, trahit *sua quemq; *voluptas, that is, propria, and it is resolved passively, quisque trahitur à voluptate suâ.

Construction of the Gen. case.

2. If many third persons meet together in one word, for plainness sake, and to take away doubt: ipse, is, ille, iste, are used for sui or suus: as, omnes boni, quantum in *ipsis fuit occiderunt Cæsarem.

The use of inter se, and inter ipsos, amongst themselves.

3. When the relation is to the Nominative or Accusative case, we use sui, sibi, se: as, delectat hoc ipso quod inter se omnes partes corporis quodam lepore consentiunt. Damonem & Pithiam inter se fuisse.

2. If the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative case go before, then ipse is used: as, a doctis inter ipsos nec mihi cæterorum iudicio videtur solum sed etiam ipsorum inter ipsos consentiunt.

Hic, ille.

Hic is usually referred to the latter and nearer supposite; ille, to the more remote, or farther off.

Esse debet unde aliquid fiat; deinde à quo fiat, hoc causa est, illud materia Sen. Ep. 65.

Oratio Deum lenit, sed lacryma cogit, hæc ungit, illa pungit.

Rule 5.

The former Substantive is sometimes concealed or understood. Prius substantivum, quandoque re-ticeretur.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. Of relation betwixt the father and child: as, Deiphobe Glauci, for filia Glauci. Deiphobe, daughter of Glaucus.

2. The former Substantive of place, (i.e.) a holy place or temple: as, ad Dianæ, for ad ædem Dianæ, to the Temple of Diana, and so ad Opis, and ante Castoris, for ad ædem Opis, and ante ædem Castoris.

3. The former Substantive of time: as, Tertio Calendarum, for tertio die Calendarum, the third day of the Calends.

4. The former Substantive Causa is sometimes understood: as, Jusjurandum rei servandæ, non perdendæ conditum est, for causâ rei servandæ, a solemn Oath was framed for the cause of preservation, not destroying our substance.

5. The Pronoun Primitives mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are often included or understood in the Possessives: as, Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest, for meum peccatum mei solius, my sin only cannot be amended.

Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidimus, for Tuum pectus tui hominis, &c.

Et flesti & nostros vidisti flentis ocelles. Valla saith, this is not tolerable in prose, for if the Primitive be express, one number will be put for another: as, vidisti ocellos nostros, nostrum flentium. M. Far-naby saith, there is Synechdoche numeri, and thus resolveth it.

Nostros ocellos flentis, for meos ocellos mei flentis.

M 5

6. D. 10

Construction of the Gen. case.

6. Hitherto may be referred that rule in Lilly. Hæc possessiva meus, tuus, suus, noster & vester hos Genitivos post se recipiunt, ipsius, solius, &c. and the Genitive case of Participles of the Present Tense: as, clamantis loquentis; and note that to these Genitives you must not adde Substantives; you may say, audio verba tua docentis, but not docentis magistri, &c. but rather qui es magister.

Rule 6.

Sum, requireth a Genitive case as often as it signifieth possession, property, or duty. Of after Sum, is a sign of the Gen. case.	Sum genitivum postulat quoties possessionem, proprietatem aut officium significat.
---	--

Boni pastoris est tondere pecus non deglubere. It is the duty of a good Shepherd to shear his sheep, not to pull off the skin.

Observations.

1. This rule may be referred to the former (i. e.) Rule 5. for the former Substantive is no lesse understood before the Genitive case: as, Hæc vestis est Patris (i. e.) est vestis Patris, or munus, proprium, officium, pars, duty, property, office, or part, is understood: as, officii mei sum arbitratus, I thought it part of my office. Jam me Christi totum esse scis, &c. for totum proprium, the whole peculiar, &c.

2. These Pronoun Adjectives, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, and Adjectives Possessives,

Construction of the Gen. case.

possessives, humanum, of a man: belluinum, of a beast: regium, of a King, and such like, are used in the Neuter Gender and Nominative case; officium proprium, &c. being understood, which also at your pleasure may be expressed.

Humanum est errare, belluinum verò perseverare in errore, it is a mans part to erre, but the part of a beast to persevere in an error: Nostrum officium est commissum plangere, non plangenda committere, it is our part to bewail things committed, not to commit things bewailed.

The praise or dispraise of a thing is commonly uttered or used in the Ablative or Genitive case with of before it.	Laus & vituperi- Rule 7. um rei frequentius in Ablativo vel Genitivo effertur.
--	---

Ut quisque contemptissimus est, ita plerunque est *linguâ *solutissimâ, as any man is most base, so is he commonly of a most lavish tongue: eo animo sum, I am of that mind.

Observations.

1. When the praise or dispraise is put after a Noun or Verb Substantive sum es fui, in the Genitive case homo, man, or res thing, may be understood before it; but before the Ablative of the praise or dispraise, præditus or imbutus, indued or furnished, may be understood: puer virtute satis eminenti, i. e. præditus: est linguâ solutissima, i. e. imbutus

Construction of the Gen. case.

rus. linguâ, &c. est fronte caperata sed cal-
lido ingenio, *he is of a lowering look, but a*
cunning wit. Exilis est animi, *he is but of a*
shallow brain, id est, puer, or homo exi-
lis, &c.

2. Some phrases are alwayes Ablative: as, Bono animo esto, *be of good*
courage. Nunc si es animo vacuo expono
nobis quod querimus. Others are al-
ways in the Genitive: as, Non multi cibi
hospitem accipies sed multi joci, *Concer-*
ning others let not the scholar much trou-
ble himself, but use either the Ablative or
Genitive at pleasure, if homo may bee
understood in sense before the Genitive, or
præditus before the Ablative, for it will be
hard to prove that all Authors have used
such a phrase in the Genitive or Ablative
only, because some have, for as sēto
have read all Authors, so all Grammari-
ans do not limit the Rule.

3. For homo bonæ frugis, *a thrifty man,*
we read homo bonæ frugi, and nulli rei
erimus, before which, if Datives, we may
said M. Farnaby, understand deditus uti-
lis, or idoneus, given or bent, profitable or fit:
as, deditus bonæ frugi.

Rule 8,

Nouns severing or Partitiva & Parti-
dividing into parts, tive posita, Compa-
and put dividingly rativa, Superlativa,
Comparatives, Super- interrogativa, & qua-
latives, Nouns asking dam numeralia Ge-
questions, and certai nitivo plurali gau-
Nouns of number, de- dent.
light in, or require a
Genitive plural, having the sign of before it.

Construction of the Gen. case:

O * major * juvenum, in quacunque
hominum verseris frequentia, Cave alienæ
conversacionis esse aut curiosus explorator
aut temerarius judex, O thou the elder of the
young men, in whatsoever company of men thou
art conversant, beware to be a curious search-
er, or rash judge in anothers conversation.

Nouns partitives, are

Aliquis, *some one.* Alius, *another or some.*
Alter, *another, or one of the two.* Uter, *which,*
whether, or either of the two. Neuter, *neither*
the one, nor the other. Uterque, *both the one*
and the other. Ullus, *any.* Nullus, *none.*
Solutus, *only one.* Quisque, *every one.* Qui-
cunque, *whosoever.* Quidam, *some one.*
Quilibet, *every one, or whomsoever thou wilt.*
Quispiam, *some body.* Unusquisque, *every*
one. Quotusquisque, *how many.* Multi,
many. Pauci, *few.* Omnes, *all, or every, &c.*
Partim, *in part, or some.* Unus for solus, *only.*

Observations.

First, note that the Substantive coming
after the Adjective, put partitively, is un-
derstood in the same case of the Adjective,
which also agreeth therewith: as, multæ
istarum arborum, for multæ arbores istarum
arborum; or esse è numero is understood
before the Genitive case: as, è numero ista-
rum arborum.

Secondly, an Adjective put partitively in
some examples, agreeth with the Nom. case
to the Verb: as, Leo animalium fortissimus, *a*
Lion is the stoutest of living creatures; for Leo
est fortissimū animalū, i.e. fortissimū animal,
or fortissimū è numero animalium.

3. Ch:

Construction of the Gen. case.

3. The Genitives nostrum and vestrum not nostri and vestri are used after Partitives: as, nemo nostrum; and note that nostrum not nostri is always used if a Genitive case plural be added to it: as, contemptor nostrum duorum.

4. The Genitive case after Partitives is sometimes turned into an Accusative, with inter or ante, or into an Ablative with de or ex. Non unus est multis sed est multis singularis. Vir bonus est magistratibus, est unus de millibus. Primus ab Hercule belongs not to this Rule, but to the Rule of Prepositions.

Rule 2.

Adjectives which signify, 1. Desire: 2. Knowledge: 3. Remembrance: 4. Care: 5. Fear, and their contraries, require a Genitive case, with the sign of before it.

* Nescia mens hominum * fati, fortisque futura, mans understanding is ignorant of fate and future fortune.

Words belonging to this Rule.

1. Adjectives signifying desire: as, cupidus, desirous: avidus, greedy or desirous: studiosus, studious or desirous, perstudiosus: as, studiosus nobilitatis, one that favoureth the State of the Nobility: ab aliquo Cicero's studioso, by one of Cicero's Scholars: candidatus, desirous, or one that endeavoureth to obtain any thing: as, candidatus eloquentiae,

Scio te
quamdiu
vivere E-
rasmi per-
studiosum
fuisse

Construction of the Gen. case:

a student of eloquence. 2. And neglect: as, socors futuri, nothing regarding that is to come.

2. Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, which admit of the sign in before the Genitive case: as, peritus antiquitatis, skilful in antiquity: gnarus, expert or skilful: prudens, skilful: callidus, crafty or skilful: solers, witty or crafty: solers cunctandi, wise in using delays: providus, foreseeing: multorum providus, that considereth many things before hand: docilis, easily or quickly taught: docilis pravi, quickly taught that which is not good: Præscius, foreseeing, or perceiving afore hand: præcæsus, one that gheseth or divineth: divinus, one that gheseth or foreseeth: certus, assured or determined: as, exitii certus, sure to die: futuri certus, assured of that should come: utinam tui consilii certior factus essem, I would I had better known your mind or purpose: non incautus, not uncircumspect or not unprudent: imperitus, unskilful: imprudens, unskilful: ignarus, ignorant: rudis, ignorant: also with an Ablative: as, rudis es certe in historiâ, thou art doubtlesse ignorant in history: inscius, ignorant: incertus, undetermined: cæcus, ignorant: devius, swerving from or ignorant: dubius, doubtful.

3. Adjectives of Care and Carelesse: as, anxius, careful: sollicitus, careful: curiosus, careful: securus, carelesse or negligent: incuriosus, carelesse: socors, negligent: incautus, unwary, not foreseen, are also used with the Preposition de and a: as, de verbis sollicitus, careful of his words; and to after insuetus, unwont, a Genitive.

4. Ad-

Construction of the Gen. case.

4. *Adjectives of fear and confidence*: as, Timidus, fearful. Trepidus, fearful. Pavidus, fearful. Impavidus, fearless. Interritus, not abashed, without fear. Fidens, bold.

So Compos, partaker. Sic Compos, Imper. Impos, void. pos, Particeps, Ex-Particeps, partaker. ors, Consors, Geni-Exors, not partaker. tivo gaudent: as, Consors, partaker, Impos animi, one be- govern a Gen. case. sides himself.

Nunc me *compotem *voti facis, Now thou makest me partaker of my wish.

Observations.

Compos, is sometimes read with an Ablative case: as, Immortalitate compos, Heins Orat. 1. prædâ compotem, Liv. 4. 3. we also read Participem studiis, Ovid. de Ponto l. 2. El. 7.

Rule 10. Nouns ending in ax, derived of Verbs, and some Participles of the Present, and Preter Tense, changed into Nouns; require a Gen. case. Verbalia in ax, & participalia quædam præsentis & præteriti temporis, Genitivum postulant.

Tempus * edax * rerum, Time a consumer of things:

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. Nouns ending in ax: as, edax, a great eater, or devourer, of edo. Edaces multi cibi, devourers of much meat. Capax that taketh or containeth, of capio. Capax amicitie, that can consider what friendship is. Invidie capax, able to defend himself against envy: and with the Preposition ad: as, præcepta capax animus, a mind apt to take instruction.

Ferax, fertile or fruitful, of fero. Fugax, that fleeth, or one that escheweth, of fugio. Sagax, that perceiveth, and foreseeth quickly, of sagio, to perceive quickly.

Rapax, greedy, or devouring, of rapio. Tenax, that holdeth fast, and pertinax: as, pertinax recte, that will not depart from right and honesty. Spernax, that contemneth, or despiseth. Perax, one that asketh. And also in the Degrees of comparison: as, mentisque capacius altæ.

2. Participials, or Participles changed into Nouns which are easily discerned, because the Participle endeth in ing, and governeth the case of the Verb; but the Noun is commonly Englished with (that) before it, or (one that) as,

Cupiens, a Participle Englished coveting. Cupiens, a Noun, one desirous, or that loveth.

And so experiens, one that tryeth or proveth. Sitiens, one that thirsteth after, or desireth. Amans, one that loveth, or favoureth. Negligens, one that is careless. Metuens, one afraid of. Observans, one that observeth.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observantior, one that doth more diligently observe. Omnium officiorum observantissimus, he doth observe all occasions possible to doe his friend a pleasure. Reverentior, one that hath more fear and reverence. Sciens, one cunning or skilful. Insolens, not accustomed. Bellorum insolens, not accustomed to warre. Servantissimus, one that observeth greatly. Aequi servantissimus, a great observer of equity and justice.

3. Participles of the Preterperfect Tense: as, Eruditus, cunning. Eruditissimus, very well Learned. Expertus, skilful, or one that hath tried. Consultus, skilful and cunning. Consultus eloquentiæ, very eloquent. Insuetus, not accustomed. Insuetus laboris, not wonted to labour. Insuetus contumeliæ, not used to taunting or reproach. Insolitus, not accustomed. Insolitus rerum bellicarum, not accustomed to war.

The reason why these and many more govern a Genitive case, is (saith Learned Master Farnaby) by reason of the affinity or nearness of their signification to Adjectives of knowledge, desire, care, fear, or their contraries.

M. Danes giving the reason why these Participles of the Present Tense govern a Genitive case, saith, that because for the most part they are Englished like Substantives in tor or trix: as, amans for amator Masculine, and amatrix. Feminine: and moreover proceedeth to shew the difference betwixt the Participle and the Noun-Participle in this manner.

1. Patiens inedia, which is a Participle,

Construction of the Gen. case.

ple, is spoken of one who now already suffereth want at that present time. But patiens inedia, which is the Noun-Participle, is spoken of him who can easily suffer want, although peradventure he be now fed to the full.

2. So Doctus Græcam linguam, is spoken of him who hath learned the Greek tongue, neither is it now a matter, whether he knoweth the tongue or not, it being a Participle of the Preter Tense. But Doctus græcæ linguæ, is not spoken but of him who now knoweth the Greek tongue or is skilful therein.

Satago, to have enough to doe, or to be busie about a thing. Misereor, to pitie, or to have pity or compassion. Misereor, to be moved with pity, or to have pity or compassion.

Miseret, it pitieth. Miserecit, it pitieth. Poenitet, it repenteth. Tædet, it wearieth, or irketh. Pudet, it shames. Piget, it irketh or grieveth, receive a Genitive case.

* Rerum suarum *satagit, he hath enough to do about his own businesse, or of his own matters.

Observations.

To understand this Rule observe,

1. That these Verbs Poenitet, tædet, miseret, miserecit, pudet, piget, govern an Accusative case of the person, and a Genitive of the word following: as, *tædet omnes

Construction of the Gen. case.

omnes * nos * vitæ, verbatim, it *wearieth us all of life.*

2. That there may be another Accusative case of the thing in the Neuter Gender: *as*,

* Nil * me * poeniteat sanum Patris huius, *Hor. Sen. 6. l. 1.* and sometime two Accusatives, whereof one should bee Gen. *as*, Non te hæc pudeat? *Ter.* but then understand a Preposition: *as*, ob hæc, Menedem, vicem miseret me (*i.e.*) ob vicem.

3. The Infinitive Mood sometimes suppleth the place of the Genitive case: *as*, Piget respondere maledictis criminationis adeo ineptæ, quem poenitet peccasse pene est innocens.

4. Misereſcit hath sometimes a Dative case: *as*, misereſce malis.

5. Sometimes the Genitive case after poenitet, is changed into the Preposition de: *as*, de matrimonio poenitere.

6. In English the Nom. case is often set before the Impersonals, and then you must change your speech by (*it* :) *as*, I repent, (*i.e.*) it repenteth me. Art thou ashamed, (*i.e.*) doth it shame thee? Pertæsus, hath a Gen. or Accu. case, pertæsus ignaviæ, or ignaviam.

7. Add hereto erubesco: *as*, erubesceret fortunæ; also erubescere in re aliquâ, and erubescere malis alterius: see *Obs. upon Rul. 18.*

Rule 12.

Interest, it is profitable or belongeth, and refert, it is expedient, or it availeth, put to themselves, or govern

Interest & refert Genitivum sibi subiiciunt, exceptis meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ

Construction of the Gen. case.

a Gen. case. These Ablat. excepted, meâ, tuâ, suâ nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ.

* Nullius non * refert bene vivere, it becometh every one to live well.

Faciendum aliquid, quod illorum magis quam suâ retulisse videretur, something is to be done which might seem more for their profit, then for his own.

Interest meâ, it toucheth or concerneth my profit. Interest tuâ, it concerneth thy profit. Interest suâ, it concerneth his profit. Interest nostrâ, it concerneth our profit. Interest vestrâ, it concerneth your profit. Cuiâ interest, whose profit doth it concern.

Observations.

1. The best reason I meet with why interest, and refert, have after them a Genitive of Substantives, and an Ablative of the Adjectives meâ, tuâ, suâ, and is this. Interest is thus compounded, in, re, est; and refert thus, re, fert, not with the Preposition, but the Ablative of res; so that the Genitive after interest, is the latter of two Substantives: *as*, interest magistratus, *i.e.* in re est magistratus, it pertains to a Magistrate, and the Ablative cases meâ, tuâ, suâ, &c. agree with re, in case, gender, and number: *as*, Plautus utrumque veniat necne nihil in re est meâ.

2. Interest and refert have a Gen. case not onely of the person, but also of the thing: *as*, Plurimum * refert * compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas, it much mattereth in composition, to know what words are to be placed before others.

3. The

Construction of the Gen case.

3. The Genitives of the value, are put after interest and refert, without Substantives (viz.) tanti, so much: quanti, how much: magni, much: permagni, very much: parvi, little: pluris, more: and also Adverbs: as, multum, much: plurimum, very much: parum, little: minimum, very little: paululum, very little, or somewhat: infinitum exceedingly much: vehementer, greatly: quantum, how much: tantum, so much: multum, much: nihil, nothing: paucillum, very little: nunquid, whether: facile, without doubt or controversy: aliquid, something: magis, more: minus, lesse: maxime, most: minimè, least: paulum, little.

4. The Ablatives meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ: admit for eloquence sake these Genitives, unius, solius, ipsius, ipsorum, paucorum, meâ, unius interest, vestrâ paucorum interest, tuâ solius refert.

5. Sometimes they admit of a Preposition, interest ad decus & laudem civitatis.

Rule 13.

Verbs of esteeming or regarding, have an Accusative case of the thing esteemed, and a Genitive of the value.

Verba estimandi cum accusativo rei æstimatæ habent genitivum æstimationis.

* Plurimi passim * fit pecunia, money is every where esteemed very much.

* Maximi debemus * æstimare * conscientiam. Wee ought to esteem conscience most.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. Æstimo is construed as well with an Ablative as Genitive case: as, qui magni æstimat libertatem, * parvo omnia alia * æstimat, he that esteemeth liberty much, esteemeth all other things little: so nonnihilo æstimare.

2. Verbs belonging to this Rule when they are Englished to esteem: Pendo, to esteem. Habeo, to esteem. Ducō, to esteem. Puto, to esteem, prize, value or account. Est for æstimatur, it is valued: as, Pluris est ocularis testis unus; quàm auriti decem, one eye witnesse is of more account then ten ear witnesses; but in another sense they have another construction: as, ducere uxorem, to marry a wife, which also is to be carefully lookt unto in other Rules.

3. These Genitives of the value, are put without Substantives. Tanti, so much. Quanti, how much. Maximi, most. Parvi, little. Minoris, lesse. Minimi, least. Pluris, more, or of more account. Plurimi, most, or of most account. Nihili, as nothing. Flocci, as a lock of Wooll, or as little worth. Pili, as a hair. Nauci, as the shell or pill of a nut. Assis, as a farthing. Hujus, as thus much. Teruncii, as a farthing; to which, Genitives being put alone, understand rei, aris, or pretii.

4. Note these as elegant phrases:

Æqui boni facio, } I take in good
Æqui boni consulo, } part.

Pro

Construction of the Gen. case.

Pro nihilo { habeo,
duco, } I esteem as nothing.
puto,

In minimis res nostras ponere, to esteem our own affairs lightly. In magnis viris est habendus, he is to be accounted as a great man.

Rule 14.

Adjectives of guiltiness, and Verbs of accusing, condemning, and absolving, besides the Accusative case of the person require a Genitive case, which signifieth the fault or punishment. Some of these require an Ablative case with or without a Preposition. with the sign of,

Adjectiva reatus, & Verba accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi Genitivum postulant, quod crimen aut poenam significet, præter Accusativum personæ. Quædam ex his Ablativum cum vel sine Præpositionem de.

Qui *alterum *incusat *proberi, ipsum se intueri oportet, he that accuseth another of a reproach full act, ought to look into himself.

Observations.

1. Adjectives of guiltiness. Reus, accused. Conscius, guilty, which hath sometimes a Genitive, and sometimes a Dative, and sometimes a Dative of the thing, but hath always a Dative of the person: as, *Conscius *sibi *culpæ, knowing himself faulty. Conscius alicui in privatis rebus, that knoweth ones private affairs. Manifestus, convicted or proved openly. Mendacii convi-

ctus

Construction of the Gen. case.

ctus, openly proved a liar. Manifestus delicti, manifestly convicted of an offence. Affinis, accessory or partaker, guilty or privy to. Affinis alicujus culpæ, and affinis alicui culpæ, partaker of any mans fault. Affinis sceleri, and affinis sceleris, guilty of wickedness. Popularis, a companion, fellow, or confederate of the same Town, City, State, or condition. Populares conjurationis, companions in the agreement. Compertus, convicted or found guilty. Flagitii compertus homo, a man convicted of some heinous offence. Compertus in stupro, taken in adultery. Innoxius, guiltless. Insons, guiltless, not partaker. Fraternalis sanguinis insons, not guilty of his brothers death. Suspectus, mistrusted. Criminum capitalium suspectus, suspected guilty of an offence worthy of death.

Verbs of accusing, &c.

Accuso, to accuse or blame. Accusat me id, i.e. ob id accuso *te illi, or apud illum, or coram illo *sceleris accuso te magni sceleris, or de magno scelere, or crimine aliquo.

Ago, to sue or accuse, is construed with the Preposition cum: as, Egit cum servo, he accused his servant. Ex syngraphâ cum aliquo agere, to sue or bring an action upon an obligation.

Appello, as, to commence an action against one. Appellare aliquem de pecuniâ, to call upon any one for debt; and appellari magnâ pecuniâ, to be sued for great debt.

Arcesso, to accuse. Judicio capitis aliquem arcessere, to accuse of a deadly offence. Arguo, to accuse or blame. Arguere aliquem

N

sceleris.

Construction of the Gen. case.

sceleris, crimine and decrimine, to accuse or appeach of wickednesse.

Alligo, to accuse or appeach. Alligare se furti, to charge himself with theft. Alligare se scelere, to shew himself guilty of a mischievous act.

Astringo, to be guilty of, or accuse. Astringere se furti, to commit felony. Astringere se scelere, to commit some wicked fact.

Defero, to accuse or appeach. Impietatis deferri, to be accused of unnaturalnesse. Deferre nomen alicujus, to accuse and complain upon one. Deferre sermones de aliquo ad alterum, to bring tales and reports to one another.

Incuso, to accuse or blame. Incusabo te probri, I will lay dishonesty to thy charge. Quid me incusas, for ob or propter quid, wherein dost thou finde fault with me.

Infamo, to defame or report ill of. Infamare aliquem parricidii, to slander one of murdering his Father.

Infimulo, to note or accuse. Herum avaritiæ infimulare, to lay covetousnesse to his Masters charge.

Postulo, to accuse or sue. Postulare aliquem injuriarum, to sue in an action of trespass, or of the case.

Convinco, to vanquish, to prove manifestly, or to confute. Convincere aliquem falsi, to prove a man a falsifier. Malè administratæ Provinciæ urgeri.

Damno, to condemn. Damnari capite, to be condemned to die. De pecuniis repetundis damnari, to be condemned of extortion. Damnatus longi laboris, condemned to long

Construction of the Gen. case.

long labor. Damnati cœcitate, vos vero fortuna, tam luxurioso sumptui non damnavit. Barcl. Euphor. par. 4.

Tencor, to be guilty or convinced. Teneri de vi, to be guilty of violence or murther. Plecti capite, to be beheaded. Condemno, to condemn. Sponsionis condemnari, to be cast in the wager.

Solvo, to acquit, cum famulis operum solutis, Hor. 17. l. 3.

Absolvo, to quit or discharge. Belli, bello de bello. Libero, to free or quit. Liberare aliquem metu, to put out of fear. Purgo, to clear, de re aliqua, construed with de libero, is commonly used with an Ablative: as, periculo liberare.

These Verbs following have commonly an Accusative of the fault, and a Genitive of the person, except in Possessives, &c. where the Adjective agreeth with the Substantive, denoting the crime.

Reprehendo, to blame or reprove. Reprehendo illius negligentiam, I blame his negligence. Reprehendo tuam negligentiam, I reprove thy negligence. Peccata alicujus corripere, to reprehend ones faults. Consilium alicujus vituperare, to blame ones counsel. Ignaviam tuam culpæ, to blame thy sloth. Vitium aliquod notare, to reprehend or reprove some vice. Increpas meam ignaviam, dost thou blame my sloth. Excusare tarditatem literarum alicujus, to excuse ones slownesse in sending Letters. Traducere carmina manifesto facto, to note ones verses to be stoln out of others. Suggillo, to defame, detract or reprove. Morte mulctare, to punish

Damnatus] hath a Gen. or Abl. without, but not with de.

Construction of the Gen. case.

by death. Familiam multare, usque ad mortem, to beat a family to death.

Uter, both. Nullus, none. Alter, another. Neuter, neither of the two. Alius, another. Ambo, both, and the Superlative Degree are not put to Verbs belonging to this Rule, except in the Ablative case, accusas furti, an stupro, an utroque, or de utroque.

Rule 15.

Verbs of remembrance, Memoria, & oblivionis verba, Genitive desire a Genitive or vum aut accusativum Accusative case, Ad-desiderant, Adjectiva jectives a Genitive, Genitivum. following the sign of.

Vive *memor *lethi, live mindful of death.

Observations.

1. Verbs signifying remembrance, or forgetting, require a Genitive case, or an Accusative of the thing: as,

Obliviscor, { Lektionis, } oblitus pub-
or
Lektionem, } licæ salu-
tis,

But they require a Genitive case of the person only, and not an Accusative: as, obliviscor fratris, not fratrem.

2. Adjectives signifying remembrance or forgetting, require a Genitive case only of the thing or person.

3. Memini, to make mention, or speak of, is construed with an Ablative case with de, and sometimes a Genitive, and so is in mentem venit: in mentem venit potestatis, or de potestate. Ut memini is construed

Construction of the Gen. case.

construed with a Genitive; not an Accusative case of Pronoun Primitives: as,

Meminisse { mei } not { me.
tui } te.
sui } se.

Moneo, and admoneo, to warn, or put in mind. Commoneo, commonefacio, with habent genitivum, an Accusative have a aut ablativum, cum Genitive or Ablative Propositione de. with the Preposition de. The person warned is Accusative, and the thing whereof he is warned, is Genitive, following of.

Putavi eâ de re, admonendum esse te, I thought that thou wert to be put in mind of that matter. Amicis commodis admonitus calamitatis meæ.

Observation.

If the thing whereof one is put in mind, be an Adjective put Substantively, it is put in the Accusative case also: as, *illud *me *admonuisti. Multa admonemur ab amicis, such Adjectives are these, quod, quid, hoc, istud, illud, id, idem multa pauca. Unum, duo, tria, &c. and sometimes of the thing in other Nouns: as, moneo te hanc rem, &c.

Many Adjectives have a Gen. case after them, when causâ gratiâ, or ratione, are understood: as, egregius, impiger, ferox, pervicax, saucius, fatigatus, floridus, maturus, inglorius, fessus, lassus, integer, rectus, serus, festinus, invictus, trepidus, &c. as, floridus ævi, i. e. ratione ævi.

Construction of the Gen. case.

By Greek constru- Per Hellenismum
tion these require a hæc Genitivum po-
Genitive case. stulant.

1. Verba desinendi, Verbs of ceasing or leaving off: as, desine querelarum, for desine à querelis, leave off complaints. Desistere pugnæ, for pugnâ, or de pugnâ, to leave off fighting. Abstinere rixæ, for rixâ, or à rixâ, to leave off brawling.

2. Verba imperandi, Verbs of ruling: as, Regnavit populorum, for populos, and dominor.

3. Verba admirandi, Verbs of wondering: as, miror.

4. Verbs signifying a passion of the mind; as, Indoleo, to be sorry. Invideo, fastideo, crucresco, furo, vereor.

5. Verba participandi, Verbs of partaking: as, participo.

6. Verbs of caring: as, curo, studeo.

Rule 17. Some Adverbs of place and time receive a Genitive case after them. Quædam adverbia loci, & temporis Genitivum post se recipiunt.

Piè vivite, * ubicunque * locorum vivitis, live godly, wheresoever ye live.

Observations.

Adverbs of place belonging to this Rule. Ubi terrarum, where or in what place? Ubi nam gentium sumus, in what Country be we? Ubivis gentium, in any place, in what place you

Construction of the Gen. case.

you will. Nusquam gentium, in no place. Eò loci, in that place. Eò magnitudinis, to that bignesse. Quò gentium fugiam, to what corner of the world shall I fly? Huc vicinæ, here in this street by us. Huccine rerum venimus! Is the matter come to this passe?

Adverbs of time: Nunc dierum, nowadays. Tunc temporis, at that time. Interea temporis, and interea loci, in the meanwhile. Pridiè, on the day before. Postridiè, on the day after. Minimè Gentium, in no wise.

When pridiè and postridiè, are construed with an Accusative case, after pridiè understand ante, and after postridiè understand post: as, pridiè idus, for pridiè ante idus.

Construction of the Dative case.

Nouns and Verbs require a Dative case of the thing, or person, to whom any thing is gotten, or taken from, following this sign to or for, and sometimes into, to, or upon.

Nomina & verba, Dativum postulant, rei, aut personæ, cui aliquid acquiritur aut adimitur.

* Debemur * morti nos nostraque, we and ours are due to death.

Observations.

1. This Rule is so general, that it comprehendeth not only Nouns Substantives, and Adjectives, but all kinds of Verbs, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Deponent. Hitherto are referred those phrases, where the Primitive is put in the Dative case for the Possessive: as, illustravit mihi oculos, for meos oculos. Caret tibi pectus inani ambitione, *Hor. ep. 10. p. 294.* suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

2. On or upon, are signs of the Dative (by virtue of the composition) after Actives: as, iniecit ignem ædibus, he set or cast fire on the house. Attineo, pertineo, specto, have an Accusative with ad.

Rule 2. Adjectives and Adjectiva & Verbs, signifying profit, or disprofit, govern a Dative case. *ba commodum, aut incommodum significantia, regunt Dativum.*

Nulli * rei * utilis, good for nothing.

Observations:

Adjectives belonging to this Rule: Commodus, profitable. Bonus, good. Fœlix, favourable, or profitable. Prosper, prosperous, or lucky. Salutaris, wholesome, healthful, or profitable. Incommodus, unprofitable. Inutilis, unprofitable. Malus, ill. Infœlix, unhappy, unlucky. Exitiosus, deadly, dangerous. Perniciosus, deadly, dangerous. Le-

thalis,

thalis, deadly. Damnosus, hurtful. Periculosus, dangerous, &c.

To or for after these Adjectives, is a sign of the Dative case, but seldom the Accusative with ad.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: Commodum to profit. Officio, to hurt. Incommodum, to disprofit. Noceo, to hurt, and Verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male: as, satisfacio, benefacio, malefacio.

Note here and diligently remember, for it is profitable to all who would not mistake, what Verbs have after them per se, or immediately the case of the Rule, 1. Of the thing. 2. Of person. 3. Of both, and which govern a case beside the case in the Rule. For example: Officio hath a Dative case immediately (i. e.) (no word coming between) of the thing or person: as, Lætis frugibus officere, moribus officere, lucris affecturam: and noceo, nemini nocere, reipublicæ nocere, without the sign to or for: and the like of Verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male, and bene-vento, to profit, is construed with a Dative: as, hoc tibi bene vertat, which Observation is to be looked into in all the following Rules.

These Verbs juvo, adjuvo, to help. Lædo, to hurt. Offendo, to hurt, have an Accusative case immediately, because they are Actives.

N 5

Words

Plant.
saith, no
citurum esse
hominem,
for homini:

Construction of the Dative case.

Words which signify pleasure and grief, & dolorem significat Dative cant Dativo gaudent. case.

Turba * gravis * paci, a rabble or rout, burdensome, or grievous to peace.

Observations:

Adjectives of pleasure and grief, are Dulcis, pleasant. Jucundus, pleasant. Amarus, grievous. Acerbus, grievous or displeasing. Ingratus, unpleasant. Injucundus, unpleasant. Molestus, grievous. Gravis, grievous, which have a Dative case with the sign to or for before it.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: Placeo, to please. Sedeo, Englished to please. Displaceo, to displease. Doleo, to be grieved, which sometimes admitteth an Accusative of the thing before which you may understand propter: as, tu tua damna dolo, for propter tua damna: also with de: as, sum mihi miser & de me quod dolere nihil: after these Verbs put a Dative immediately, although before it there be not the sign to or for: as, Cujus enim * malis non * indolesco perinde ac meis. Qui * sibi * displicet in vitis * Deo * placet.

Words which signify help, favour, and the contrary to these require a Dative case.

Quæ auxilium, favorem, atque his contraria significant, Dativum adsciscunt.

Bonis

Construction of the Dative case.

Bonis nocet quisquis pepercerit malis, he hurteth good men, whosoever hath spared bad.

Observations.

Adjectives appertaining to this Rule; Amicus, favourable. Benevolus, friendly or favourable. Blandus, gentle or friendly. Charus, dear, or favoured. Familiaris, a friend. Intimus, a dear friend. Socius, a mate or fellow. Propitius, favourable. Præsto, ready at hand. Præsto esse alicui, to help, or lend one his help. Ad nutum tuum præsto est, he is ready at your beck. Inimicus, hurtful. Infestus, hateful, or hurtful. Infensus, displeased, or unfavourable. Odiosus, hateful or grievous, unpleasant. Invisus, hated, or odious.

To or with after these Adjectives, is a sign of the Dative, infensus mihi.

Verbs belonging to this Rule; Auxilior, to help. Opitular, to aid or help. Patrocinator, to defend. Indotatis patrocinari moneor, to heal. Ruta medetur venenis, orationis tenuitati atque inopie nulla ratione mederi queas. Faveo, to favour. Grator, to give thanks to. Gratulor, to be glad and rejoice in ones behalf. Gratulor tibi hanc rem, gratulor tibi de hac re, gratulor tibi in hoc, I rejoice in your behalf for this thing. Gratulari fortunis alicujus. Opem fero, to help. Subvenio succurro, to help. Plaudo Tu pro sin- to flatter. Sux plaudit suaviter prudentia. galaritua Parco, to spare or forgive. Parcere seni. humanitate Indulgeo, to favour. * Indulgere labori. venium in. dulge Mr. Parce tamen hac tibi indulgeas. Fautria Farn. auctoritati. You see these are usually con- stituted.

Construction of the Dat. case.

grieved with a Dative case immediately, although before it there be neither the sign to nor for.

Rule 5.

Adjectives of likeness and unlikeness: also, Communis, common: Proprius, proper: and superstes, a survivor, are joyned usually to a Dative, and sometimes to a Genitive case.

Adjectiva similitudinis, & dissimilitudinis, communis, item proprius & superstes Dativo usitatus, nonnunquam & Genitivo adiunguntur.

Aranearum * similes leges * cassibus,
Laws like to Spiders webs.

Observations.

Adjectives of likeness: similis, like: par, like: æmulus, like: labra æmula rosis, lips in a manner as red as roses: æquus, alike: geminus, equal: germanus, very like: idem, like.

2. Some Compounds of con: as, concors, agreeable, or alike: coævus, of the same age: coætaneus, which is of one time and age: consentaneus, agreeable: cognatus, agreeable, very like.

Adjectives of unlikeness: dissimilis, unlike: dispar, unlike: diversus, contrary: alienus, contrary: inæqualis, unequal, not even: iniquus, not indifferent, or just, unjust.

A alienus, governs a Dative or Ablative alone, or with the Preposition a, or ab, and sometimes a Genitive.

Alienum.

Construction of the Dative case.

Alienum arti, not agreeable to art.
Alienum suæ Majestate, not meet for his Majesty.
Alienum à sapiente, not meet for a wise man.

3. Commonly Adjectives when they signify likeness, or unlikeness, in manners, learning, &c. have a Genitive, sæpe solet similis filius esse Patris, but likeness in form, age, fortune, &c. a Dative.

4. A after Adjectives of likeness, hath to understood before a: as, like a man, for like to a man, and to before the: as, like the man, for like to the man.

Verbs of comparing require a Dative case following to or with. Verba comparandi Dativum requirunt. Rule 6.

Necesse est sibi nimium tribuat, qui * se * nemini * comparat: It is necessary that hee attribute too much to himself, who compareth himself to no man.

Observations.

1. Verbs of comparing, have an Accusative case of the thing compared, and a Dative of the thing to which it is compared.

2. This Dative case is sometimes turned into the Accusative, with ad: as, si ad eum comparatur, and sometimes into the Ablative with cum comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

3. Verbs of comparing are compono, to compare: comparo, to compare: confero, to compare: æquo, to compare: adæquo, to compare: æquipero, to compare: contendo, to compare.

Words.

Construction of the Dative case.

Rule 7.

Words which signifie Quæ aptitudinem
fitnesse or the contrary, significant aut con-
choose to themselves a tra Dativum sibi ad-
Dative case with to aptant.
or for before it.

Aptus alliciendis foeminarum animis, fit
to allure womens mindes.

Observations.

1. Adjectives belonging to this Rule. Aptus, idoneus, habilis, opportunus, ineptus, all Englished fit, unfit, and the Verb apto: as, Sublatus impedes, & vertice humanifimè aperto, me orationi aptabam.

2. Sometimes they admit an Accusative with a Preposition: as, inepti ad magna.

Rule 8.]

Adjectives of near- Propinquitatis ad-
nesse, delight in a Dative Dativo gau-
tive case, with the sign dent.
to.

Vicinus illi, very like unto him.

Observations.

1. Adjectives belonging to this Rule: Vicinus, near, next. Propinquus, near. Proprior, neerer. Proximus, next. Finitimus next. Confinis, next. Conterminus, nigh. Contermina ripæ, nigh to, or close upon the bank. Contiguus, very near. And propinquo poetice.

2. Though this be the usual construction,

Construction of the Dative case.

tion, yet sometimes they admit of a Preposition ad. Proximus, ad dominum nullo prohibente sedeto, and qui te proximus est for ad te.

Words which signifie Quæ facilitatem
easnesse and the con- significant contra-
trary, will have a Dativum volunt.
Dative case, with the
sign to.

Nil mortalibus arduum est, nothing is difficult to mortals.

Observations.

Adjectives belonging to this Rule. Facilis, gentle. Mitis, meek or mild. Obvius, gentle or easie: as, obviam urbs inimicis, a City easie to be taken. Also obviam, to meet: as, se mihi obvium dedit, he met me. And also the Adverb obviam, to prevent, stop, or resist: as, Itum est obviam superbiæ nobilitatis, hee met with, or stopp the pride of the nobility. Pervius, easie to bee passed. Pervia domus ventis, a house open to all windes. Perspicuus, easie, or evident. Dubius, doubtful or difficult. Difficilis, hard. Durus, hard. Arduus, hard. Inivus, hard. Laboriosus, hard.

Verbs: as, Libet, it liketh. Si *librum tibi erit, if it shall like you. Non est injustitia in consilio Dei æterno de iis *quos *libuit perdendis. Licet, it is lawfull. Liquet, it is clear. Expedi, it is needful, they are usually construed with a Dative case, having to or for before it.

Præcept

Præcepta ad iram, inclined to anger. Pronus ad vitia, inclined to vice. Proclivis à labore ad libidinem, ready to fall from labour, to unlawful lust. Constructed with the Preposition ad.

Rule 9.

Verbals or Adjectives derived of verbs ending in bilis, delight in a Dative case, with of before it. Verbalia in bilis Dativo gaudent.

*Meretrix * cuius * mercabilis. Ovid. A light housewife that may be bought of any one.*

Rule 10.

Words which signify faithfulness or unfaithfulness, require a Dative case. Quæ fidelitatem aut infidelitatem, denotant Dativum postulant.

*Vereor nè * cui de te plus quam * tibi * credas, I fear lest thou believe any man of thee, more then thy self.*

Observations.

1. *Adjectives pertaining to this Rule: Fidelis, faithful. Fidus, trusty. Credulus light, or rash of belief. Infidus, unfaithful. Malefidus, unfaithful: To after them is a sign of the Dative case.*

2. *Verbs: Credo, to believe. Fido, to trust. Diffido, to distrust. Fidem habeo, to believe. Confido, to trust, or put trust in. Fidem facio: as, Fidem Pedoni apud me faciebat, he made me believe. Pedeo, they have usually a Dat. immediately, or per se.*

3. *Sometimes they admit of an Ablat. case,*

case, before which you may understand a Preposition: as, anni tempore confisæ.

4. *Credo, to commit, hath an Accus. case, at nemo ex vobis audet se credere pugna.*

5. *Although these and many other verbs have after them a Dat. yet the Relative quod or quid, Adjectives put Substantively, Rule 3. in Concord Figurative, which by the rule of the Relative, Rule 4. in Concord plain, should be such case as the Verb governs, are notwithstanding put in the Accus. as, de irrisione quid respondes, non ignoro illud.*

Si quid monitoris è gestu, ut aliquid responderet.

Si quid mihi credas, si quid sub te profecerit ei libebit quod non licet, cum periculo custoditur quod multis placet. It is otherwise with the person: as, Est Deo gratia, habet quibus tuto possit fidere & quibus maxime fidit, and with a Substantive joined to the Relative. Si cui flagitio succumbas.

Words of obeying, Obediendi, & resisting, or withstanding, require a Dat. case. Rule 11. Obediendi, & resistendi voces dativum adscribere.

** Diabolo si * resistatur est ut formica si * obediatur ut leo, if we resist the Devil, he is as a pismire, if we obey him as a lion.*

Non bene crede mihi, servo servitur amico.

Observations.

1. *Adjectives belonging to this Rule, supplex, humble or suppliant: morigerus, obedient. Dicto*

Construction of the Dative case.

Dicto audiens, obedient. Obnoxius, subject or obedient. Rebellis, rebellious, or disobedient. Pugnax, stubborn, contentious, or contrary. Adversus, opposite, or contrary to, which have a Dative of the word following the sign to.

2. Verbs Pareo, to obey. Obedio, to obey. obsequor, to obey. Obtempero, to obey. Morem cedo, to obey. Morem gero, to obey. Morigeror, to obey. Servio, to serve. Famulor, to serve. Ancillor, to serve humbly, and diligently. Velificor, with diligence to endeavour or procure. Honori suo velificari. Blandior, to flatter, fawn, or deceive. Adulator, to flatter, as dogs do their Master. Assentior, to agree, consent, or accord. Palpo, to flatter. Repugno, to resist, and pugno, to resist. Certo, to contend or strive, which admit of cum. Cum aliquo certare. Adversor, to resist. Luctor, to strive with, or struggle against. Reluctor, to wrastle, or strive against. Reclamo, to gainsay, or cry against, which govern a Dative case immediately of the thing or person, whether there be sign or no. Although sometimes we read a Preposition: as, cum votis suis luctantur. In antiquos mores suos veluti professâ lite pugnabat. In voluptates reclamare, &c. Adulator, assentor, assentior, adversor palpo, are also read with an Accusative case sometimes.

Rule 12.

Verbs of giving and restoring, receive a Dative case. Verba dandi, & reddendi, Dativum admitrunt.

* Dat * tibi divitias, he giveth riches to thee. Obser-

Construction of the Dative case. 283

Observations.

1. Verbs of giving and restoring, have an Accusative case of the thing given: as, dat divitias, and a Dative of the person following the sign to: as, dat tibi divitias.

2. The Dative often loseth its sign, if the natural order of the words be inherited, or misplaced: as, I promise thee this, for I promise this to thee: I give thee this, for I give this to thee, &c.

3. Verbs belonging to this Rule. Dedo, to render up. Tribuo, to give. Largior, to give liberally. Trado, to deliver. Mando, as, to commit, or to give in charge. Concedo, to grant, or give. Ministro, to proffer, offer, or give. Suppedito, to give, or minister. Commodo, to lend. Præbeo, to give, or offer. Exhibeo, to offer, present, or give. Impendo, to bestow, or employ. Reddo, to restore. Restituo, to restore. Refero, to render or restore. Remunero, to requite. Remetior, to measure again. Also Remunerare aliquem munere, to reward one with a gift. Facta dicta mea noctu remetior, In the night I remember again all that I have done or spoken.

Do literas tibi, I send a Letter to thee, that thou might'st bear it to another, tibi tanquam tabellario.

Do literas ad te, I send a letter to be carried to thee, that thou maist read it.

Observe in general that,

4. Ancient Writers were wont to put the

Construction of the Dat. case.

the Preposition *ad* almost to all Verbs governing a Dat. Do is used elegantly with in to the Accusat. of the thing: as, *dat animum in luctus*.

Rule 13. Verbs of being angry, pass into a Dat. case having with before it. Verba irascendi, in Dativum transeunt.

Fidis * *offendar* * *medicis* * *irascar*
* *amicis*, I can be displeased with my faithful Physicians, I can be angry with my friends.

Observations.

Verbs of being angry. *Irascor*, to be angry. *Indignor*, to be mad angry, to be displeased. *Succenseo*, to be angry for good cause. *Offendor*, to be offended, or displeased.

They have a Dat. case immediately of the thing or person.

Rule 14. Verbs of commanding, and shewing, receive a Dat. case. Verba imperandi & nunciandi Dativum admittunt.

* *Imperat aut* * *servit collecta pecunia*
* *cuique*, money gathered together, commandeth or serveth every one.

Observations.

Imperat
verò mea
pudori re-
spectu digni-
tas.

Verbs: *Impero*, to command with authority. *Jubeo*, to command. *Præcipio*, to command, *præcipere aliis*.

Dominor,

Construction of the Dat. case.

Dominor, to rule. *Dominari astris*. *Dominari in suos*. *Mando*, as, to bid or command, *mandare alicui*, *mandare in ultimas terras*.

Nuncio, to shew. *Nuncio tibi salutem ab sodali solidam*, I have hearty commendations to you, &c.

Renuncio, to refuse, or have nothing to do with. *Renuncio civilibus officiis*, *renuncio amicitiae*, *hospitio*, *muneris*, *understand repudium vel nuncium*, as some will.

Dico, to tell. *Declaro*, to declare or shew. *Aperio*, to open or discover. *Expono*, to set forth, or shew. *Explico*, to spread open, or declare. *Monstro*, to shew. *Indico*, to shew. *Explico*, to spread open, or declare.

Monstro, to shew. *Indico*, to shew. *Significo*, to note. *Ostendo*, to shew. *Narro*, to shew, tell, or report. *Patefacio*, to open, declare, or discover. *Provinciae toti quam maximum militum numerum imperat. Imperat praetoribus*. *Jubeo*, to decree, or appoint, governeth an Accus. case, *Legem jussit*. 2. It is sometimes construed with an Accus. of the thing: *Jubet ea quae facienda sunt*. *Specialis*, quid, what; *hoc*, this; *illud*, that; *id*, that; *aliquid*, something; *nihil*, nothing; *multa*, many things, being Adjectives, put Substantively. 3. It is construed with an Accus. case of the person, by reason of an Inf. Mood understood after it. *Imo filium potius jube*, otherwise *jussit militibus*, *jussit custodibus*. *Voluptatibus imperare*. *Quot voluminibus præcipiunt de restitutione*, *præcipio tibi hanc rem*, *superioribus nubibus præcipisset*, and *præcipe lugubres cantus*, *Hor. Ode 24. l. 1.* Verbs

Construction of the Dative case.

Verbs of shewing, have usually an Accusative case of the thing, and a Dative of the person.

Rule 15. Verbs of promising, Verba promittentia, debendi, solvendi, minandi, Dativum adsciscunt.

Hæc tibi promitto, I promise these things to thee.

Observations.

1. Verbs of promising. Promitto, to promise. Polliceor, to promise. Spondeo, to promise, which have an Accusative case of the thing promised, and a Dative of the person.

2. Verbs of owing and paying. Debeo, to owe. Magnoperè tibi debeo, I am greatly bound to you. Solvo, to pay. Appendo, to pay. Numero, to pay, which have an Accusative of the thing, and a Dative of the person.

3. Verbs of threatening: Minor, to threaten. Minitor, to threaten. Interminor, to threaten much, have usually an Accusative of the thing, and Dative of the person. Minatur sponsæ suæ. Hinc & hinc tauros premens vitulis minatur. Sen. Trag. Thyes. v. 729. quæ nihilominus vestris nunc minatur capitibus, quam aliorum minitatur senatui. Mortem fratri est minitatus.

Rule 16. These Verbs delight in a Dative case usual. Hæc dativo gaudent suadeo, persuadely:

Construction of the Dat. case.

ly: suadeo, to counsel: deo, respondeo, vaco, sel: persuadeo, to nubo, misceo, hæreo, move or persuade: voveo, devoveo, in-respondeo, to answer: nitor, infideor. vaco, to apply, or give himself to: nubo, to be married: misceo, to mingle: hæreo, to stick fast: voveo, to vow, &c.

Observations.

Suadeo and persuadeo tibi. Suadeo, to counsel, hath an Accusative case of the thing counselled hence. Argumentum ad suadendum fidem respondeo tibi, si monitis meis parum respondeas, ad hæc ille responderet, and tuæ epistolæ non rescripsi, I have not answered your Letter. Vaco, nec vacat mus, nec suis vacaret. Nubere uxori. Misceo: ag, Metum miscebant operi. Viliori turbæ immiscui. Prorectura viro miscet sitiente rubetam, Juv. Sat. 1. v. 70. miseroque tumultu miscetur, Virg. An. l. 2. mistus in Bacchum cruor spectante te potetur. Sen. Trag. Thiest. v. 66. and hære in parentis vestigiis, hæret lateri lethalis arundo.

Sum, with the Compounds except possum, require a Dative case with to or for before it. Sum cum compo- Rule 17. fitis præter possum exigit Dativum.

Multa *petentibus *desunt multa, Many things are wanting to men desiring many things.

Ob.

Observation.

1. Absum, is construed with an Ablative. Absint inani funere naniæ: à quâ vitâ absint prudentia.

2. Adsum, sometimes hath a Preposition. Adesse ad aures, in pugna non affuerat.

3. Desum, insum, intersum, subsum, have also sometimes an Ablative with a Preposition: Desuit in Antonio, insunt in amore, in hoc interesse in nullâ re subest suspicio.

Rule 18.

Est and suppetit for habeo, requireth a Dative case. Est & suppetit pro habeo Dativum exigunt.

An nescis longas * Regibus * esse * manus; Knowest thou not that Kings have long hands? pauper enim non est * cui rerum * suppetit usus.

Observations.

1. To after est is a sign of the Dat. case, if the order of the words be observed; as, I have a Book, or a Book is to me: thou hast a Book, or a Book is to thee: he hath a Book, or a Book is to him. Plurally, Wee have a Book, or a Book is to us: yee have a Book, or a Book is to you: they have a Book, or a Book is to them.

2. If you translate your speech by habeo then this phrase holdeth not at all, which you

you may with no lesse eloquence doe.

Sapè tacens * vocem verbaque * vultus * habet, by the phrase of est thus: sapè vox & verba sunt tacenti vultui.

Sum, with some other Verbs, require a double Dative case, with to and for.

Sum, cum aliis quibusdam Verbis, Rule 19. geminum adseiscit Dativum.

Pietas nemini fraudi esse debet, Godliness ought to be a guile to no man.

Observations.

1. When a and to come after sum, a notes the Nom. to the Dat. and when the Nom. is changed into the Dat. it hath two Datives: pietas sapienti lucro est, godliness is gain to a wise man, or for gain to a wise man.

2. Verbs having after them two Accusative cases, whereof the latter is put in the same case with the former, by Rule 6. p. 229. and a Dative, doe in like manner often change the latter Accusative case into the Dative, and so have after them two Datives, and an Accusative. Hunc sibi locum domicilium, or domicilio delegerunt.

3. Verbs belonging to this Rule: do, to give: duco, to esteem, judge, or think: verito, to impute: id mihi vitio vertit, hee blameth me for that: pateo, to be opened: indo, to give. Galasimo nomen mihi indidit parvo Pater. Plaut. Stich: ac. 2. Scen. 1. cui nunc cognomen Julo.

O

Verbs

Construction of the Dat. case.

Rule 20.

Verbs of taking away, of driving away, of differing, have ordinarily a Dative case after them following the signe from.

Verba adimendi, arcendi, dissidendi, Dativum sibi usitatus subiiciunt.

Inimici mei, mea mihi non meipsum ademerunt, *My enemies have taken away mine, not my self from me.*

Observations:

Sometimes they are construed with the Prepositions à, ab, è, ex, or de.

1. Verbs of taking away. Adimo, to take away. Eripio, to take away by force. Demo, to take away. Diripio, to take away by violence. Surripio, to steal or take away privily. Detraho, to pull away. Tollo, to take away. Excutio, to take away. Excutere oculos alicui, to dash ones eyes out of his head. Lacrymas excutere alicui, to make one cry. Extorqueo, to take away by force. Execo, to cut away, or cut out. Detero, to diminish. Curto, to diminish. Abrogo, to take away, or depose. Potestatem alicui abrogare, to deprive one of his authority. Non exciderat menti, *Barc. Euphor. p. 157.* Adimam cantare severis, *Hor. l. 1. Ep. 19.* and arceo, defendo, prohibeo, dissideo, differo, discipulo, dissentio, discedo.

Rule 21.

Some Verbs compounded with præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, Dativum possulant verba quædam composita cum, præ, ob,

Construction of the Dat. case.

ob, in, inter, super, ad, con, sub, ante, require a Dat. case. post, ob, in, inter, super.

Quod satis est, cui contingit, nihil amplius opret, *Let him wish no more, who hath what is enough.*

Observations.

This of all the Rules in the Grammar, is most intricate.

Mr. Danes to untangle it, makes three of it, and doth well.

1. That Actives and Deponents signifying actively, have an Accus. and Dat. Iniquissimam pacem iustissimo bello antefero, and suam sortem supergressa. Hostibus insidior.

2. That Neuters and Passives so compounded, have a Dat. without an Accus. Hoc mihi sufficit, animarum saluti invigilare, si oleum vasi ingeratur.

3. That præeo, præsto, præcedo, præcurro, have a Dat. or Accus. and many others also compounded with ante, ob, in, doe change their Dat. into the case of their Preposition.

Others say, Verbs so compounded have usually a Dative, and add to them circum and contra, and say that few Neuters compounded with inter and ante, have an Accus. case.

The best instruction is to rely upon Authority; yet it is to be noted,

1. If to or for, come after any such Verb, you may put a Dative, cum nemini

Construction of the Dat. case.

obtrudi potest itur ad me. Conducit hoc tuæ laudi. Interventit his cogitationibus avitum malum.

2. Many Verbs so compounded, belong to former Rules, which are discerned by their English: as, Adversor, succurro, ignosco, præcipio, invideo, &c.

3. Have always a book in readiness, to note what is the use of authority: as,

Præ.

Præstenduntur præcordia cordi. Legatis imperat quos legionibus præfecerat. Præsidere diei & nocti, to rule over. &c.

Ad.

Adhæreo religioni, and ad murum adhæreo, and justitiæ honestatique adherescere. Adequito castris. Adfremit his quatitque caput. Fœmina connipedi semper adhinnit equo. Adhinnire ad orationem, to receive a speech with applause. Adnabam terra Christus homo pariter ac Deus affidet Deo. Affulsit mihi spes. Huic ædium parti affulget sol. Affulsit fortuna mihi, &c. ob scænè dictis aut factis arridere.

Con.

Habeo alia multa quæ nunc condonabitur. * Hellenismus. Levem Magistrum misericordem principem vocant, qui scelentibus quibusdam vel connivet, vel etiam faciet. Omnis oratio meribus consonet. Congruit mulier mulieri magis. Convicior pontifici, & ignorantia conjuncta est arrogantia.

* Neutra
plurali
gaudent
verbo singulari.

Sub.

Construction of the Accus. case.

Sub.

Si invitis nobis irascitur nunquam rationi succumbet. Alteri successit tertius & tertio quartus succedunt testis. Pecunia fortunæ subjacet. Si consuetudini suffragatur veritas. Cui subit ratio.

Ante,

Antecello, antecedo, anteco, antesto, anteverto illi & illum. Virtus omnibus rebus anteit.

Post.

Postponere honestum officium scorto, to set more by an harlot, then by honest duty, because it is Asiye, it hath an Accusative with a Dative.

Ob.

Obrectare legi, and proximo. Populus assuescat bonis oppedere. Nostro labori obstrepere, to cry out against our labour. Tyrannidi obsecundare vitæ insidiari.

In.

Quorum eruditionem imitatur, eorum quoque moribus diligentissimâ æmulatione insistat. Non modò invidetur illi ætati, sed etiam faverur. Instare operi. Miseris insultare. Dum Priami Paridisque busto insultet. Cupiditas mihi incessit. Imperiis, divitiis, inhiare, and inhiant ad ea quæ perennia sunt ac cœlestia. Insidere medullis, to stick fast to the marrow. Innatat concreto sanguini. Alienis malis ingemiscere incumbens

Construction of the Dat. case.

bens tereti olivæ. Marmorī non pulveri inscribere.

Inter.

Lupus intervenit fabulæ. Interposita cruribus suis arundine. Cui nemo interdici possit. Interdico tibi aquā. Interclusuri hostem commeatu à commeatu, & hosti commeatum.

Circum.

Vinculum libertati meæ circumdārum. Murum silvæ circumdārum.

Obeo, adeo, aspicio admiror, admitt not of a Dative.

Præeo, præcedo, præcurro, præverto, prævenio, præsto, to excell. Præverto, prævertor, with many others have an Accus. Præcurritis mihi, præcurrit rationem anteibat illis, anteire cæteros.

Rule 22. Hei, ah, alas, and Hei & væ Dative væ, wo to, are put to apponuntur. a Dative case, with the sign to.

Hei * misero * mihi, alas to me wretched man. Væ victis, wo to men vanquished.

These have a smack of Greece. Ista Græciam sapiunt.

Nostro generi non decet. Vobis decet, ut voluptati mæror comes consequatur. Quæ comitantur huic vitæ. Alienis rebus curos.

Poets

Construction of the Accus. case. 295

Poets use the Dat. Usurpant Poetæ for an Accus. case. Dativum pro Accusativo.

It clamor cœlo, for ad cœlum.

Construction of the Accusative case.

Verbs Actives, Deponents, and also Neuters, signifying actively, govern an Accus. case of the thing or person, into which the action passeth immediately with the or without a sign. **V**erba Activa, Deponentia item & Neutra Activè significantia regunt Accusativum rei; aut personæ in quam transit actio. Rule 1.

Crescentem sequitur cura pecuniarum, care followeth money encreasing.

Observations.

1. Of after oleo, sapio, crepo, is commonly a sign of the Accusative case, crepat facinora sua.

2. Exosus and perosus signifying actively, govern an Accusative case.

3. Verbs Neuters, have an Accusative case of their own, or near signification, which sometimes is turned into the Ablative, diu videor vitâ vivere.

4. Cedo, for tell me, or give thou, governing

O 4

an

an Accus. case: as, Cedo queniuis arbitrum.

5. Archaicè, & of old Substantives, governed the case of these Verbs. Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem.

Rule 2.

Poets put absolutely Accus. cases of Adjectives of either of both numbers, in the Neuter Gender of Adverbs.

Accusativos Adjectivorum in Neutro Genere utriusque numeri absolutè ponunt Poëtæ pro Adverbijs.

Torvum for torvè, grimly. Stridens horrendum, shrieking horribly. Immane, for immaniter, mightily, wondrously.

Rule 3.

Verbs of asking and teaching: also cælo, and some other Verbs, govern a double Accusative case, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Verba rogandi & docendi, cælo item, & alia quædam genus regunt Accusativum, unum personæ rei alterum.

* Frugalitatem & * temperantiam * multos * docuit penuria. Extream need hath taught many thriftiness and temperance.

Observations.

1. Of, after a Verb of asking, is a sign of the Accusat. and from after cælo.

2. Verbs of asking, are, Rogo, to ask. Posco, to require. Flagito, to ask importunately. Postulo, to require or demand. Obsecro, to beseech heartily. Oro, to intreat. Hortor,

Hortor, to exhort. Percontor, to ask. Doceo to teach. Edoceo, to teach perfectly. Erudio to instruct. Rogor, I am asked. Doceor, I am taught. Poscor, I am required. Moneor, I am warned, which Passives also keep the Accus. case of the thing.

Cuncta edoctus perlegatus, Salust. cohortatus cæteros.

3. The Accusative case of the person after Verbs of asking, is often made by the Ablative case with a or ab, veniamque oramus ab ipso.

4. The Accusative case of the thing after doceo, moneo, and cælo, is often made by the Ablative with de. Hæc Patrem celavit, or de his, hoc illum celatum voluisti.

5. Moneo and admoneo have an Accus. of the thing of Adjectives put Substantively: as, hoc, illud, istud, quod, id, quid, nihil, unum, multa, which as I have before said, are put to many other Verbs in the Accus. case: as, si quid urimur, Hor. Ode 6. l. 1. si quid illa etiam perplexè annuerit, if shee, &c. and two Accusatives, consulam hanc rem amicos. Me aliquid juvare. Me quidquam adjuvas. Quod te hortor, te id consulo si quid me voles. Nihil imperium spectabant vergo id lachrimatur. Id stomochabar. Si id credis & me ignoras. Ter. Heauton nec te id consulo.

The measure of a thing and space or distance of place, are uttered in the Accus. case, and sometimes in the Ablat.

Mensura rei & Rule 4. spacium seu distantia loci, in Accusativo efferuntur. interdum & in Ablativo.

O 5 Negat

Construction of the Accus. case.

Negat se à te * pedem discessisse, he denyeth that he hath separated himself a foot from thee.

Observations.

1. The measure of a thing is put after these *Adjectives*: longus, latus, altus, crassus, long, broad, high, thick; by measure understand an inch, a yard, a pole, a foot, ten foot, &c.

2. Sometimes the measure is put in the *Gen. case*: areas latas pedum denum, longas quinquagenum fatito. Murum in altitudinem quatuor cubitorum erigendum statuit. So mensura, spatio, longitudine, latitudine crassitie, which are sometimes put instead of the aforesaid *Adjectives*, and we read ad duos pedes altum.

3. By distance of place, understand paces, furlongs, miles, &c. as, nec longis inter se passibus absunt. A recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere, wee must not depart from a good conscience a nails breadth.

4. If the space be in the *Gen. case*, understand via, viam, or itinere before it, abest bidui, that is, iter bidui, and we read ad milliaria viginti, and circiter millia passuum.

Rule 5.

O an Interjection of outcries, governs an Accusativum regit, Accusative case, so sic & hem.

O

Construction of the Voc. case:

O hominem impurum! O lewd man. Hem Davum tibi. O Davus to thee.

Sometimes the Interjection & is understood before the Accusative case, me miserum! cur non ades? for & me, &c.

Construction of the Vocative case.

O An Interjection of calling or of naming, governeth a Vocative case, and also hem, heus, proh, ohe.

O Vocantis vel Rule 1: Appellantis vocativo gaudet: ut & hem, heus, proh, ohe.

O formose puer nimium ne crede colori, O fair youth, trust not too much to external beauty.

Observation.

The Interjection & is sometimes understood before the Voc. case: as, Maeste virtute esto, for & maeste, &c. Quibus Hector ab oris expectate venis, for & expectate, &c.

Construction of the Ablative case.

The instrument, the cause, & the manner is put in the Ablat. case.

Instrumentum, causa, Rule 1. & modus in Ablativo efferuntur. * Dete.

Construction of the Ablat. case.

* Deteriores omnes sumus * licentiâ, we all are the worse by overmuch liberty.

Observations.

1. This Rule is common to all sorts of Verbs, to Substantives, and Adjectives.
2. To know when the word is the instrument, it is easie; for a * it hath commonly with before it, so it is a Substantive of a thing material, signifying a body, or something that may be seen: as, a knife, a sword, a club, &c. and answereth to the question wherewith, induo te veste.
3. The cause answereth to the question, why? with the signs by or for: as, I did it for thy sake: why? tuâ causâ, for thy sake.
4. The manner answereth to the question, how? with these signs of, at, with, by, through, and commonly is a Substantive of a thing immaterial, without a body, and signifying somewhat that cannot be seen. How hath he performed this? Suâ sponte, of his own accord. Eâ lege, on that condition.
5. Sometimes to the cause or manner of the action, a Preposition is added: as, præ, ab, de, per, propter, ob; but to the instrument the Preposition is seldome or never express. Nec loqui præ moerore potuit semper magno cum metu dicere incipio.
6. Whitherto belong gaudeo, lætor, afficio, prosequor: of after glorior, is a sign of the Ablative. Suâ victoria gloriarentur, but then de or in seems to be understood, which are usually express, The

Construction of the Ablative case.

The part affected, the descent, kindred, stock, or lineage, the Countrey, are put after Nouns Adjectives, Verbs Neuters, and Verbs Passives, in the Ablative case, but with Poets very often in the Accus.

Pars affecta, genus Rule 29
patria, subiciuntur
nominibus Adjecti-
vis, Verbis Neutris,
& Passivis in Ablati-
vo sed frequentius,
apud Poëtas in Ac-
cusativo.

Crine ruber, niger ore, brevis pede, lumine læsus, Red haired, black mouthed, short footed, sore eyed. Insignis genere, renowned for his lineage, or as touching his stock.

Observations.

1. By the part affected, understand affected with colour: as, white, black, red, &c. red as touching the hair; here the part affected with redness, is the hair, or lameness, sickness: as, lame on the feet; the part affected with lameness is the feet, or something belonging to some part.
2. Before the Accusative case per, quoad, or secundum, may be understood. Bacchanalia vivunt (i.e.) secundum Bacchanalia; or Bacchanalium ritu.
3. Sometimes the part affected is put in the Gen. case: as, discrucior animi, I am sore tormented in minde, and discrucior animum, and discrucior animo: also these, animi nimius, integer, anxius, præceps, arrectus, abjectior, incertus, suspensus, maturus, validus, miser, amens, fidens, saucius, trepidus, timidus, fervidus, rectus festus, æger lapsus, invictus. The

Construction of the Ablat. case.

The price of a thing is put in the Ablat. case with the sign for, in, at. Precium rei in Ablativo ponitur.

Nocet empta dolore voluptas. Pleasure bought for grief, hurteth. Vitâ hoc illi pene steterit. This almost cost him his life.

Observations.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: Emo, to buy. Vendo, to sell. Veneo, to be sold. Constitit, it cost. Stetit, it cost. Conduco, to hire. Loco, to let out to hire. Est, it is worth in value, or at the price of. Quod non opus est assucarum est. Aestimo, to sesse, or value. Censeo, to levy a tax. Redimo, to redeem. Addico, to sell to him that will give most. Liceo, to be prized. Liceor, to set the price higher. Licitor, to cheapen.

2. *Adjectives: as, Venalis, that is set to sale. Carus, dear. Vilis, cheap. Vili, good cheap. Paulo, for little. Plurimo, for very much. Duplo, for double, which sometimes are put without Substantives.*

3. *The thing bought, is put in such case, as the Verb governs immediately, but the price at which it is bought, is the Ablative: Ambitum quem tot angustiis emunt certe absque invidia habent. Valet sometimes admits of an Accusative case of the value. Valet asses duos, or assibus.*

4. *These Genitive cases are put without Substantives after Verbs of price. Tanti, for so much. Quanti, for how much? Tantidem, for so much at that price. Quanticunque, for how*

Construction of the Dative case.

how much soever. Pluris, for more. Minoris, for lesse. But if Substantives be added, they are put in the Ablative case together with their Substantives: as, tantâ mercede docuit, and sometimes in the Genitive: as, vir minimi precii.

5. *For after muto and commuto, is a sign of the Ablative case; the thing changed, is Accusative; the thing for which it is changed, is Ablative. Valet ima summis mutare: per momentaria voluptas * in * perennem cruciatum * commutabitur.*

Words signifying plenty or want, delight in an Ablative or Gen. case of the thing, wherein any thing aboundeth.

Quæ copiam significant aut inopiam, Ablativo gaudent, vel Genitivo rei, quâ quid abundat.

Rule 4.

*Animus * culpâ * plenus, semet timer. A minde full of vice seareth it self. Omnis actio vacare debet temeritate, & negligentia. Every action ought to be void of rashness, and negligence.*

Observations.

1. *The common signs before the Ablative are, of, or with, sature dierum.*

2. *The thing filled, the thing emptied, furnished, encreased, is Accusative, or such case as the Verb governs, and that wherewith it is encreased, furnished, &c. is Ablative. Ego hoc * te * fasce * levabo, * eget * quo in * abundas * consilio. Adjectives.*

After

Construction of the Ablat. case.

After these put an *Ablat. or Gen.*

Plenus, full. Dives, rich, or full. Locuples, wealthy, or full. Satur, fertile, or full. Tentus, strutting out, or full. Distentus, full. Fœcundus, abundant, fruitful, or full. Vacuus, void, or empty. Inanis, empty or void. Orbus, deprived. Inops, destitute. Nudus, void, or empty. Liber, free, or void of.

After these usually put a *Genitive.*

Benignus, fruitful, or much given to. Vini somnique benignus, much given to wine and sleep. Fertilis, fruitful. Liberalis, free hearted, bountiful. Prosper, prosperous, or lucky. Lætus, fertile, or fruitful. Largus, bounteous. Prodigus, wastful, or abundant. Profusus, flowing, abundant, excessive. Sterilis, barren, or empty. Pauper, one that wanteth, or lacketh. Argenti & auri pauper, that hath little money. Indigus, needy. Egenus, needy, lacking. Immunis, free. Expers, void, or without. Expers metu, without fear. Purus, void. Vitam publicæ infamiæ innocentem laudare.

After these usually put an *Ablative.*

Onustus, laden. Gravis, plenteous, or full. Gravidus, full of. Maetus, more encreased or augmented. Maeti virtute estote. Maetæ animi morumque tuorum. Refertus, full, replenished, or stuffed. Differtus, filled, or stuffed. Fœtus, full. Cassus, void, or empty. Viduus, bereft, or deprived. Extorris, banished. Exul, banished, which also have sometimes, but very seldom a *Gen. case.*

Liber, vacuus, immunis, purus, nudus, inops,

Construction of the Ablat. case.

inops, orbus, extorris, admit of the *Proposition a & ab.*

Adverbs belonging to this Rule governing a *Genitive case.*

Abundè, abundantly. Affatim, abundantly. Satis, sufficient. Parum, little. Quoad, as far as: *as*, quoad ejus fieri potest, as farre as could be. Nè intermittas quoad ejus facere poteris, scribere ad me, omit not as much as thou canst to write to me.

Opus and usus signifying need, require an *Ablative case* of the thing needed, with of before it, the person needing, if it be expressed, being the *Dative.* Sapiens nullâ re indiget & tamen multis illi rebus opus est, a wise man lacks nothing, and yet he hath need of many things, i. e. which are useful to him, and yet he can want them. Opus is elegantly used with the *Participle* of the *Preterperfect Tense.* Opus est consulto, it is necessary to take good advice. Opus est invento, they must finde it out. Opus est facto, they must perform it. Opus est exquisito, we must needs search out. Opus est parato, they must take heed. Opus est parato, it is needful to prepare. Opus est transcurro, they must run quickly, and sometimes with a *Substantive*: *as*, hoc mihi opus est convento homino, I must needs speak with this man; and sometimes the *Passive Supine*: *as*, quod est maxime opus iacta, which is very necessary to be cast.

Verbs belonging to this Rule, which have rather an *Ablat.* than *Genitive.*

Abundo,

Construction of the Ablat. case.

Abundo, to abound. Mano, to spring or increase. Affluo, to abound. Luxurio, to abound excessively. Augeo, to furnish or fill. Maſto, to grow or increase in, to fine. Onero, to lade, burden, or overcharge. Satio, to cloy or fill. Cumulo, to augment or increase. Opulento, to enrich, or make wealthy. Premo, to overcharge. Beo, to comfort, or enrich, to make glad or happy. Communico, to take part of: as, mensa sua communicare, aliquem, to give one meat at his table. Levo, to unburden, or to rid out of. Exonero, to unload. Nudo, to make void. Spolio, to bereave. Orbo, to bereave. Viduo, to bereave. Exhaurio, to empty or rob. Privo, to bereave. Expedio, to quit or discharge. Fruſtor, to disappoint. Fraudo, to deprive or deceive. Paupero, to make poor. Emungo, to cheat. Emunxi argento senem, I cheated the old man of his money. Vaco, to want.

After these an Ablat. or Genitive.

Impleo, to fill. Compleo, to fill. Egeo, to lack. Indigeo, to lack. Egeo, aris, carco to want. Saturo, to fill or cloy. Scateo, to be full. Potior, to obtain. Hic ipse qui rerum nunc potitur Rex. Potior voto, I obtain my desire.

Rule 5.

Utor, to use. Fruor, to enjoy. Fungor, to exercise an office or duty. Vescor, to feed. Vicitto and vivo, to live by eating. Nitro, to leave or trust to. Nascor

Utor. Fungor. Fruor. Vescor. Vicitto. Vivo. Nitro. Nascor. Creor. Satus. Ortus. Editus. Sto. Conſto. Ablativo gaudent. Also

to

Defungi
in hac re
cupio.

Construction of the Ablat. case.

to be born. Creor, to be bred, or begotten. Satus, begotten. Sto, to stick, keep or stand to. Conſto, to consist, or depend of, govern an Ablative case.

Abutor, defungor, Teren. I perfungor, conſruor, desire to be rid of this matter. De-convescor, to eat together. Defungi cura, to be rid of care.

Boni * utuntur mundo ut * fruuntur. * Deo mali * uruntur * Deo ut * fruuntur * mundo. Good men use the world, that they may enjoy God. Wicked men use God, that they may enjoy the world.

Observations:

1. Utor, fungor, fruor, vescor, have usually an Ablative case of the thing or person, immediately after them, without any respect had to a sign: as, vescor carnibus, and nitro, as niti sanguine. Fiducia virtutis nobis nitendum est. Rapto, and ex rapto vivere, to live by ravin or spoil. And quot artibus, quot molestiis constet hæc vita. Also quæ tota ex rebus fictis commentitiisque constaret. Jam illis promissis non standum esse, quis non videt, now who seeth not that it is not meet to stand to those promises, and abutor, to abuse. Divitiis abuti, to waste prodigally his substance. So Defungor, to dispatch. Perfungor, to doe ones office well.

2. Of after nascor, creor, satus, ortus, editus, it is a sign of the Ablative, and sometimes a Preposition therewith, ab his majoribus orti.

Dignus

Construction of the Ablat. case.

Rule 6.

Dignus, worthy. Indignus, unworthy. Dignor, to vouchsafe or think worthy. Præditus, induced. Captus, taken in. Contentus, satisfied, or well pleased with. Fretus, trusting, or having confidence in, or being bold upon, will have an Ablative case.

* Indignus est * dandis qui non est gratus de datis. *He is unworthy of things to be given, who is not thankful for that which is given.*

Observations.

Of after dignus, indignus, dignor, is a sign of the Ablative case; and

With after præditus, captus, contentus, in or on after fretus. Contentus modicis, meoque latus, fretus, juventâ. When dignus is read with a Genitive case it is a Greek construction.

Rule 7.

Comparatives govern an Ablative case of the Noun, to which comparison is made, and which is expounded by than.

* Asperius nihil est * humili cum surgit in altum. *There is nothing more untractable, than a poor man, when he riseth to height or preferment. Plus anno, above a year.*

Obser-

Construction of the Ablat case.

Observations.

1. Than after the Comparative degree of Nouns or Adverbs, is a sign of the Ablative case: but if quàm be express, it coupleth like cases with the Comparative after the Verb: as, Asperius nihil est quam humilis est.

2. Sometimes an Accusative case is used with a Preposition: scelere ante alios immanior omnes. Crucem statui jussit præter cæteras altiozem.

3. Malo is construed with an Ablative case after the manner of Comparatives: as, malim hordei granum omnibus gemmis, or malo for magis velim.

An Ablative case, which signifieth the measure of excess, is set after Comparatives with the sign by.

Comparativis sub- Rule 8.
jicitur Ablativus, qui mensuram excessus significat.

* Sesquipede est quam tu * longior, hee is taller then you by a foot and an half.

Observation.

Verbs of exceeding, besides their Accus. of the thing exceeded, may have an Ablative of the word signifying the thing wherein that excess is, and also another Ablative of that which signifieth the measure of exceeding.

Incredibile est * quanto * herum * anteo

Construction of the Ablat. case.

teo * sapientiâ. *It is a thing not to be believed, how much I excel my Master in wisdom.*

Rule 9.

Comparatives, and moreover Superlatives for intension sake, do take cò, so much: quò, by how much: hoc, by so much: paulò, by little: nimìò, by a great deal: tantò, by so much: ætate, by age: natu, by birth, and aliquanto.

Comparativa adeo & Superlativa intendendi gratiâ, admittunt, cò, quò hoc, paulo, nimio, tanto, quanto, multo, ætate natu.

* Quo quisque ingenio * minus valet, * hoc se * magis attollere & dilatare conatur. *By how much the less every man is able in wisdom, by so much the more he endeavoureth to advance or magnify, and to spread abroad himself.*

Observation:

The before the Comparative, is turned into Latine, by quò, cò, tantò. *The better soldier, the worse man. Miles quò melior, cò vir nequior.*

Rule 10.

In other respects Comparatives and Superlatives keep the case of their Positives.

In aliis Comparativa & Superlativa positivorum casus retinent.

Naturâ * tenacissimi sumus * eorum, quæ radibus annis percepimus, *by nature we keep those things most sure, which we have learnt in our untaught years.*

An

Construction of the Ablat. case.

An Ablative case is taken, or put absolutely, a Participle being added, or also understood.

Ablativus absolutus Rule 11. tè sumitur, adjecto Participio, vel etiam intellecto.

Nil juvat * amisso claudere septa * grege. *It helpeth nothing to shut the fold, when the flock is lost.*

Observations.

To understand this Rule,

1. The Nom. case and his Verb, must come after some of these, when, whilest, if, through, or after, that, which when the Ablative is put absolute, are not expressed by dum, cum, quando, si, quanquam, postquam: as, amisso grege, for cum amittatur grex.

2. The Nom. case is turned into the Ablat. as, grex into grege; and the Verb if it be Active, into a Participle of the Present Tense; if Passive, into a Participle of the Preterperfect Tense ab amisso. But if the Verb be sum, the Participle is not expressed, but understood: as, te duce, thou being Captain, and nondum liberâ civitate, understand existente, and the Participle is to agree with the Ablat. case absolute.

3. When the whole sentence supplieth the place of a Substantive, the Participle is put in the Neuter Gender, and this onely in Participles of the Preterperfect Tense.

* Permisso, seu dicere prius, seu audire maller, *It being permitted whether he would speak first or hear.*

4. In these and such like sayings, pon map

Construction of the Ablat: case.

* The Active Participle is turned Passive.

may use the Ablative absolute, 1. *Cæsar being Victor.* 2. *Cæsar being crowned.* 3. *Cæsar triumphing.* 4. *God * sending his son redeemed us;* *Deus misso filio, &c.* 5. *Having when the Participle is of a Verb Passive: as, his verbis dictis, having spoken these words.* *Confectis bellis, having finished his wars.*

Rule 12.

Verbs, 1. Of receiving. 2. Of buying. 3. Of taking away. 4. Of putting away. 5. Of distance. 6. Of disagreeing, do not choose or require an Ablat. case, with the Preposition a, ab, c, or ex.

Verba accipiendi, mercandi, auferendi, amovendi, distandi & dissidendi, adsciscunt ablativum cum Præpositione a, ab, c, vel ex.

Accepi literas à nuncio, I received the Letter from the messenger.

Observations.

1. Verbs belonging to this Rule: *Accipio* to hear or receive. *Audio*, to hear. *Intelligo* to learn. *Cognosco*, to perceive. *Disco*, to get the knowledge of a thing, to learn. *Conjicio* to conjecture.

2. *Emo*, to buy. *Mercor*, to buy. *Conduco* to buy, or take house or land to hire.

3. *Sumo*, to take. *Aufero*, to take away. *Eripio*, to snatch away.

4. *Moveo*, to put away. *Arceo*, to drive away. *Pello*, to drive away. *Defendo*, to keep from. *Propulso*, to drive away. *Prohibeo*, to keep from. *Caveo*, to defend. *Furor*, to steal.

5. *Dissto*,

Construction of the Ablat. case.

5. *Dissto*, to differ. *Dissideo*, to differ. *Dissentio*, to differ. *Discrepo*, to differ. *Discordo*, to differ, discern or to vary. *Distinguo*, to differ.

Although many of these Verbs have after them in another sense, another case with a Preposition: as, *conjicere se in pedes*, or in *fugam*, to run away, yet of or from after them is a sign of the Ablative, with a Preposition, by this Rule, and oftentimes a Dative, by Rule 20. in construction of the Dative case: as, *discrepet his alius*. *Per. Sat. 6. v. 18. aurem substringe loquaci*, *Hor. Ser. l. 2. Sat. 5. derogas fidem suam, divinitati*, *Hein Orat. 18.*

Mereor, to deserve, with the Adverbs, *benè*, well: *malè*, ill: *melius*, better: *pejus*, worse: *optimè*, as well as can be: *pestimè*, as bad as can be; *ita*, so, cleaveth fast to an Ablative case.

Mereor cum Ad- Rule 13.
verbiis benè: *malè*:
melius: *pejus*: *op-*
timè: *pestimè*: *ita*:
Ablativo adhæret
cum Præpositione
de,

*Cur * de * improbis * benè * mereretur?*
Why would he deserve well of ill men? Viri
ita de me meriti, men that have so deserved of
me.

Divers cases of divers reasons may be put to the same Verb.

Eidem verbo diversæ casus, diversæ rationis apponi possunt.

Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentem,
P propria

Construction of the Ablat case.

propria manu, he delivered his garment to mee to gage, then being present, with his own hand.

Observations.

1. Dedit hath the Accusative vestem, by the Rule Verba Activa, li. 5. pa. 295. Rule 1.
2. Mihi is the Dative case, by Rule 12. li. 5. pa. 282.
3. Pignori is Dative, by Rule 19. lib. 5. pag. 289.
4. Te presente, the Ablative absolute, li. 5. p. 311. Rule 11.
5. Propria manu, the Ablative, by Rule 1. li. 5. p. 299.

Lilly

The question and the answer thereof, shall be the same case and Tense. Interrogativum & ejus redditivum ejusdem casus & temporis erunt.

Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? Divitiarum, Of what things is there no fulnesse? Of riches. Quid agitur. Satur.

Observations:

1. By repetition of part of the question, the Case or Tense by which answer is to be made, is easily discerned: as, quis me sequitur? who followeth mee? nemo; that is, nemo me sequitur quid meritis? Virgam, that is, virgam meritis, &c.
2. Also when the question is asked by cuius, cuja, cujum, whose? as, cujum pecus Melibæi; that is, pecus Melibæi.

3. Q

Verbs of a various construction.

3. Q when we must answer by meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester: as, *Ecce hic codex, whose book is this?* meus, mine; that is, hic codex est meus, this book is mine.

4. Lastly, when the question is made by a word that may govern divers cases: as, quanti empra? parvo. Quanti ergo? Octo assibus; because for after the Verb of price is a sign of the Ablative, except tanti, quanti, &c. Rule 3. p. 302. l. 5.

Verbs that have a divers construction.

Some Verbs in respect of their divers signification, are diversly construed.

Quædam verba Rule 1. pro diversa significatione, variè construntur.

Verbs belonging to this Rule:

1. Ausculto, to obey, is construed with a Dative: as, ausculto tibi; but ausculto, to hear, hath an Accusative: as, ausculto te.

2. Consulo, to ask counsel of, hath an Accusative: as, consulo te, to give counsel, it hath a Dative case: as, consulo tibi, to determine or give sentence, an Accusative or Ablative, with a Preposition. Pessimè istuc in te atque in illum consulis, thou dost determine as badly as may be against thy self and him.

P 2

3. Laboro

3. Laboro, to endure pain and grief, or to be diseased. Laboro febri, I am sick of a fever. Laboro pedibus, and ex pedibus, I am lame or diseased in the feet. Laboro de salute publicâ, I am careful for the Commonwealth. Laborare dolore, to labour and travel with child, &c.

4. Impono, operi finem imponere, to end a work. Aris honorem imponere, to offer sacrifice on the Altars. Imposuit mihi, he deceived me.

5. Præsto, to excel. Homo homini quid præstat, how much one man is better than another. Præsta te eum, qui mihi à teneris unguiculis es cognitus, shew thy self to bee the same man, that I have ever known thee from thy tender youth.

6. Caveo tibi, I provide for thee, that thou take no harm. Cavere periculum, to avoid or eschew danger. Ut à Cassio caveret, that he would take heed of Cassius. Quod nihil de iis Augustus cavisset, because Augustus took no heed of them.

So that Caveo, to beware lest one take hurt is construed with a Dative case: but caveo to beware lest one cause or do hurt, is construed with an Accusative or Ablative with à or ab. Post sermonum ambages malo cavere jussit.

7. Also metuo, timeo, formido, have the same construction: as, metuo tibi, I am careful of thee: but metuo te, I fear thee, lest thou hurt me: and metuo à te, I fear lest thou hurt me. Metuo de vitâ, I am afraid of my life. Metuo abs te de verbis tuis, I fear lest thy words will do hurt. Timeo, & timeo-

te,

te, and timeo mihi abs te, I fear lest thou wilt hurt me: but timeo tibi, I am affraid on thy behalf, lest some hurt will come to thee. Timeo with the Preposition de, is used both ways: as, de republicâ valde timeo, I am greatly affraid of the Commonwealth, lest it take hurt. De superis ingrate times? O unthankful man, art thou affraid of God, lest he hurt thee? Formido, to have great fear, or to be greatly affraid, hath the same construction with metuo.

8. Studeo, Englished to will or desire, hath an Accus. case: as, omnes unum studetis, yee all desire one thing: but studeo, to study or give himself to, hath a Dative immediately of the thing: as, Studuit medicinæ, he studied Physick. Catalina studuit, he favoured Catalines side.

9. Conduco, it is profitable, or maketh much for: as, conducit hoc tuæ laudi, this maketh much for your praise, and in the same sense it is construed with ad or in, to the Accusative. Conduco, to hire, hath an Accusative: as, conducit equum, hee hired a horse.

10. Convenit, convenient or agreeable. Convenit illa tibi, shee is meet, or fit for thee. Sævis inter se convenit urfis, cruel bears agree amongst themselves. Hæc fratri mecum non conveniunt, my brother and I do not agree in these: quanquam de hoc parum inter autores convenit, albeit Authours doe not agree concerning this matter. And with an Accusative: as, priusquam legatos conveniret, before that he met with the Ambassadors: and convenienter, the Adverb: as, vivere natu-

Verbs of a various construction.

re convenienter, to live agreeable to nature.

11. Contingo, to happen or chance, a Dat. Quis contigit, to whom it happened, and an Ablative with in, in magnis animis ingeniisque id plerumque contigit. Contingo, to touch, an Accusative, funem contingere.

12. Æmulor, to envy, a Dative: as, æmulor tibi: æmulor, to imitate, an Accusative: as, æmulo te.

13. Deficio, to fail, a Dative, or an Accus. as, vires deficiunt mihi, or deficiunt me, and deficere animo, or deficere animum, to fail or quail in stomach, or courage. Deficio, to forsake or leave, a Dative, quum jam glandes atque arbuta sacra deficerent Sylva. Deficio, to revolt or fall off, an Ablative with a Preposition, à Galbâ ad Senatum defecerat.

14. Differo, to differ, an Ablative with ab: as, differt ab illo, and Accusative with inter: as, differunt inter se, and differo, to put off, an Accusative. Differt vadimonium, and with a Dative, by Rule 20. lib. 5. pag. 290.

15. Prospicio, to see to, or provide for, a Dat. as, Prospicere salutem, to provide for safety. Prospicere, to foresee, an Accus. prospice futura.

Rule 2.

Some Verbs keeping the same signification, notwithstanding are allotted a divers construction.

Quædam verba eandem retinent significationem, diversam tamen sortiuntur structuram.

1. Dono, to bestow or reward. Donat phaleras

Verbs of a various construction.

leras militi, he bestoweth horse-trappers on the soldier, or donat militem phaleris, he rewardeth the soldier with horse-trappers.

2. Impertio, to salute, also to employ. Plurimâ salute impertit Parmenonem, he salutes Parmeno heartily. Impertias aliquid temporis huic rei, thou maist employ some time on this matter.

3. Mitto tibi, I send to you, and mitto ad te.

4. Moderari { affectum } to temper the passion.

5. Latet { sensui, } the sense or meaning is secret or unknown.

6. Occumbere { mortem, } to die.

7. Medicor { morbo, } I heal a disease.

8. Olere redolere { argentum, } to savour or sent of silver.

9. Manere promissis, to stick to his promise. Poena te manet, punishment expects you.

10. Præstolor, to wait or abide. Præstolari spei. Præstolari tibi, and præstolari te.

11. Refero, to report or propound. Retulit ille mihi & retulit ad Senatum, he reported it to me, and propounded it to the Senate.

12. Obtrectare alterius laudibus, or laudes to detract from ones praise. Obtrectari legi, to speak against a Law.

Construction of Verbs Passives.

13. Subeo, subit me comes, to my mind, and subit mihi, and subit animum, subit mentem, subit memoria, I remember. Subire portum, and subire muro, to enter into, and goe under, and subire limina, and subire ad tecta.

14. Instruo, to cover or spread upon. Instravit equo penulam, he spread his cloak on his horse. Instravit equum penulâ, he covered his horse with his cloak.

15. Aspergo, to sprinkle. Aspergo labem civi, I cast a spot upon the Citizen. Aspergo civem labe, I sprinkle the Citizen with a spot.

16. Induo, to put on. Induo fratri vestem, I cloath or put a garment on my brother, and induo fratrem veste, I cloath my brother with a garment. Quidlibet indutus, Hor. lib. 1. Ep 17. comantem Androgei galeam induitur, Vir. Æn. 2.

17. Pluit pluit lapis, and pluit lapides and pluit lapidibus, it raineth stones.

Construction of Verbs Passives.

Rule 1.

AN Ablative case of the doer, is put after Verbs Passives, with the Preposition a, ab, or abs, and sometimes a Dat. of the word following of or by.

PAssivis subjicitur Ablativus agentis cum Præpositione a, ab, vel abs, & interdum Dativus.

Deforme

Construction of Verbs Passives:

Deforme est quos dignitate præstas, * ab * his virtute * superari. It is an ill-favoured thing to be * exceeded * by * these in virtue, whom thou excellest in worthiness.

Observations.

1. Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voice fall under this construction: * ab * hostibus constanter * pugnatur.

2. Videor, I seem, hath always a Dat. case: as, mihi sic videtur.

3. Of, out of, by, from or concerning, after a Verb, is a sign of a Preposition, serving to the Ablative case, a, ab, abs, de, è, ex: as, veneo, fio, ab hoste veniri, factus ex limo, loqui de Rege quid de iis existimandum est? à Deo expetenda, unless they be otherwise excepted in several Rules: as, of after Verbs of deprivation; as, orbo privo spolia & levo, libero, is a sign of an Ablat. case: as, spoliat nos judicio, privat approbatione omni, orbat sensibus.

4. Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voice, sometimes have the Ablative case of the doer, and also the Infinitive Mood esse understood: as, strato discumbitur ostro for discumbitur ab illis. Gaudeo ventum ad te, for ventum esse ad te. Dum stas reditum oportuit, for te reditum esse, &c.

Other cases except the Accusative, abide in Passives, which were (the cases) of Actives: as,

Cæteri casus excepto Accusativo, Danes, manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum.

P 5 * Persolvi

Construction of Participles:

* *Perfolvi gratiâ non potest nec malo patri, a man cannot worthily recompence, no not an ill Father.* Ejus orationi vehementer ab omnibus reclamatum est, *for* omnes reclamârunt occurritur autem nobis, & quidem à doctis & eruditis, *for* docti & eruditi occurrunt nobis.

Construction of Participles.

Rule 1.

Participles govern the cases of their Verbs, when they retain the sense of Participles.

Participia regunt casus suorum verborum.

*Cœcæ sunt divitiæ ac * se * insipientes excoecant, Riches are blind, and they blinde men beholding them.* Tacturus sydera. Nocirurus tibi. Lucis egens.

Rule 2.

Participles of the Passive voice, very often govern a Dative case with the sign of before it.

Participia passiva frequentius Dativo gaudent.

Honestæ bonis viris non occulta petuntur, Honest things, not hidden, are desired of good men.

Semel omnibus est calcanda via lethi, The way of death is one day or other to be trod of all men.

Obser.

Construction of the Infin. Mood.

Observations.

1. *The Participle of the future in dus, is oftentimes put in the Neuter Gender absolutely, without a Dative case: as, orandum est, for orandum est nobis, and with the case that the Verb governeth: as, utendum est ætate, tuo tibi judicio est utendum.*

2. *Must is turned into Latin either by oportet, it behoves, debeo, I ought, or the Participle in dus. Abeundum est mihi, I must go hence. Studendum bonis literis dum adhuc viger ingenium. Si mori nolim fide misero carendum est. Oportet me abire, debemus studere, &c.*

Construction of the Infinitive Mood.

The Infinitive depends of Nouns, Verbs, or Participles.

Infinivus pender à nominibus, verbis aut Participiis.

Rule 1.

* *Audax omnia * perpeti gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas. Mankind adventurous to endure all things, runneth headlong through mischief forbidden.*

Misere discedere quærens, Hor. Ser. 9. lib. I.

Obser.

Construction of the Infin. Mood.

Observation.

1. Authors usually when a person or Substantive cometh between two Verbs, having the sign to, do change the speech by *ut, that, or qui, which*: as, *I have meat to eat which yee know not of. Cibus habeo quo vescar quem vos nescitis. Est for Licet admitteth an Infinitive. Est quoddam prodire tenus.*

2. When a thing is done to an end, and the sign to cometh before a Verb, you may change your speech by *ut, that*, ex eo quod ipse potest in dicendo aliquantum remittet, * *ut tu tandem aliquid esse videre*; and to after the Participle in *du, put* absolutely; as, *non vivendum est ut edas sed edendum ut vivas*, thou must not live to eat, but eat to live, two Infinitives may depend the one on the other. *Illum ad se venire oportere.*

Rule 23

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood place before themselves an Accusative case instead of a Nominative, but have after them such case as the Verb properly governeth.

Verba Infiniti modi pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuunt.

*Omnem crede * diem tibi * diluxisse supremum*, Believe that every day hath shined to thee the last.

Observation.

The sentence is no less translated by quod

Construction of the Infin. Mood.

quod or *ut*, though not so briefly and eloquently.

1. By quod Englished because, noting a thing done, or after Verbs of sense: as, *gaudeo quod tu advenisti salvus.*

2. By *ut, that*, after Verbs of commanding, intreating, or desiring, and of a thing to come: as, *jussit ut pecunia mergeretur, and jussit pecuniam mergi.*

Decet, it becometh.

Juvat, it delighteth.

De oportet, it beho-

verth. Delectat, it

delighteth, govern an

Infinitive Mood, an

Accusative case oftentimes going before it.

* *Me * juvat in primâ Christum * coluisse juventâ*, It delighteth me to have loved or honoured Christ; or I am glad that I have loved or honoured Christ in my best youth, or the prime of my days.

There is sometimes a defect or want of the Verb governing the Infinitive.

Ellipsis est modò Verbi regentis.

Rule 4.

1. *¶ Decet, it is meet. Par est, it is meet*: as, *hæcine fieri flagitia*, that these villanies be committed.

2. *Cœpit, he began*, is oft understood before the Infinitive Mood: as, *criminibus terrere*, for *cœpit criminibus terrere*.

3. Sometimes there is a defect of the Infinitive Mood it self: as, *fidibus scire*, understand canere, to know to sing to the harp.

4. The

Construction of the Infin. Mood.

4. *The Verb proficisci, to go, after cogito and volo: as, cogito Athenas, for cogito proficisci Athenas. Rhodum volo, understand proficisci.*

5. *Habere is understood after volo, nolo, malo: as, vin vinum, wilt thou have any wine?*

Rule 5.

Sometimes Infinitives are put for Supines, and Gerunds or Gerundive voices, but especially amongst Poets for metre sake.

*Ponuntur inter-
dum Infinitivi pro
Supinis & Gerundiis
sive Gerundivis.*

*Magnum dat * ferre talentum, for ferdum.*

Rule 6.

A Nominative case is put after Infinitives of Verbs Substantives, some Passives, and Neuters of gesture.

*Nominativus Sub-
jicitur Infinitivis
verborum Substanti-
vorum Passivorum
quorundam, & neu-
trorum gestus.*

*Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat,
Cato chose rather to be, then seem to be good.*

But an Accusative or Dative case going before, they have the same cases on both sides, as,

*Cato * se * esse quam videri * bonum malebat, Cato would rather himself be, then seem to be good.*

Obser-

Construction of Gerunds.

Observations.

1. *The Verbs belonging to this Rule, are Rule 1. lib. 5. 241.*

2. *These Verbs licet, expedit, datur, or some other Verb governing a Dative case, casteth the Dative before the Infinitive: as, natura * beatis * omnibus * esse * dedit. * Nobis * necesse * est fortibus * viris * esse.*

3. *In these and such like examples, the Accusative case is understood before the Infinitive Mood. Expedit bonas esse vobis, for vos esse bonas.*

4. *An imitation of Greek construction,*

*The Infinitive hath Infinitivus non
not so much an Accu- tam Accusativum
sative as a Nomina- habet quam Nomi-
tive. nativum.*

*Patiens vocari Caesaris ultor, for patiens
se vocari Caesaris ultorem, Suffering thy self
to be called Caesars Revenger.*

Construction of Gerunds.

*Gerunds and for-
mer Supines go-
vern the cases of their
Verbs.*

*Gerundia & pri-
ora supina re-
gunt casus suorum
verborum.*

Rule 11

*Quis * talia * fando temperet à lacry-
mis,*

Construction of Gerunds.

mis, who in speaking such things can abstain from tears?

Ibo ad templum * Christo * servitum,
cur * te is * perditum.

Observations.

1. A Preposition: as, of, in, with, for, from, or by, before a word ending in ing, is a sign of a Gerund either in di, do or dum.

2. Substantives ending in ing, which are derived of Verbs: as, Doctrina, learning. Audicio, hearing, and the like, admit of the signs (a) or (the) before them, lib. 1. p. 2. and other clauses ending in ing, belong to other Rules: as, he is of a cunning wit, est callido ingenio, Rule 7. li. 5. p. 251. and have somewhat in the English coming between the Preposition, and the word ending in ing: as, the hand of one writing, manus scribentis; a word ending in ing, after any English of sum, is made by a Verb: as, what is he doing? quid agit? he is writing, scribit.

Rule 2.

Gerunds in di, like Gerundia in di
Genitives are governed tanquam Genitivi,
of some, both Sub- reguntur à quibus-
stantives and Adje- dam tum Substanti-
ctives. vis rum Adjectivis.

Grande * subsidium optimè * agendi
præbet amor negotii. Love of business af-
fordeth great help to do most excellently.

Obler-

Construction of Gerunds,

Observations.

1. To or of, next after Substantives of things not material: as, studium tempus, ars otium, &c. and Adjectives which govern a Genitive case, Rule 9. p. 244. as, cupidus, peritus, ignarus, gnarus, &c. Adu-landi gens prudentissima, cunctandi solers, is made by the Gerund in di, except with Poets, who use the Infinitive.

2. The Verbal Substantive is sometimes used instead of the Gerundive voice: as, qui erant in muro custodiæ causâ collocati, or custodiendi causâ.

3. The Gerund in di is sometime construed with a Genitive plural: composui hunc librum instituendi puerorum gratiâ, for pueros, and sui confirmandi causâ, Vestri consolandi gratiâ, for se and vos.

Gerunds in do, like	Gerundio in do, Rule 3.
Ablatives, depend upon	ut Ablativi pendent
Prepositions serving	à Præpositionibus à,
to the Ablative case.	ab, abs, de, è, ex,
	cum, in, pro.

Ignavi * à * discendo, cito deterrentur,
sluggish ones are quickly discouraged from learn-
ing.

Observation.

A Verb, Participle, or Adjective, (not go-
verning a Genitive case) having after it
a word ending in (ing) with of: as, of
teaching:

teaching: with *in*, *as*, *in* learning: also with: *as*, with reading: for, *as*, for speaking: from, *as*, from walking: or by, *as*, by hearing. The word ending in *ing*, shall be made by the Gerund in *do*: *as*, memoria *excolendo *augetur. *Ex *defendendo quam ex accusando uberior gloria *comparatur. Ratio recte loquendi est *iuncta *cum *loquendo. Impiger in scribendo. Negligens in discendo. Defessus sum ambulando, I am weary of walking.

Rule 4.

They are also put without a Preposition, like Ablatives of the manner or cause.

Ponuntur & citra Præpositionem tanquam Ablativi modi vel causæ.

Nihil est quin male *narrando possit depravari, there is nothing but may be corrupted, by ill reporting. *Omnia *conando docilis solertia vicit.

Observation:

Sometimes also they have the construction of a Dative case: *as*, mox *apta *narrando crura dat, and may be made by the Substantive in the Dative case: *as*, deligenda nunc arbor est suspendio.

Rule 5.

Gerunds in *dum*, after the manner of Accusatives, are governed of Prepositions serving to the Accus. *ad*, *inter*, *ante*, *ob*, *propter*.

Gerundia in *dum* Accusativorum ritu reguntur à Præpositionibus.

Nullum

Nullum ad nocendum tempus angustum est malis. No time is short, for wicked ones to hurt.

Observations.

The Gerund in *dum* is used,

1. When a thing is done or set forth to an end: *as*, Locus amplissimus ad agendum, a most ample place to treat or plead in. Accipe hos sex asses, ad chartum & cætera comparanda.

2. After Verbs of motion: *as*, eo ad piscandum.

3. When time is denoted, answering to the question when: *as*, inter cœnandum, at supper time: ante domandum, (i. e.) antequam domentur, before they be tamed.

4. To, next after any Substantive of things material: *as*, gold, silver, iron, &c. posco te pecunias ad subjugandum, or ad subjugandos hostes, or after any of these Adjectives, apt, ready, slow, profitable, unprofitable, aptus, paratus, tardus, idoneus, bonus, utilis, inutilis, commodus, incommodus, ad militandum, vehemens ad dicendum. Or after Verbs Englished to exhort, to incite, to prevail: *as*, hortor, incito, valet, traho, flagitor, is a sign of the Gerund in *dum*. Or else the speech may be changed by (that or which) non omnia ingenia ad res magnas agendas sunt idonea, or quæ res magnas agant, or ut agant.

5. Gerunds of Verbs Actives, having after them an Accusative case, may elegantly be changed into Participles in *dus*, a Gerund in *di* into a Genitive, a Gerund in *do* into an

Construction of Gerunds.

an Ablative or Dative, a Gerund in dum into an Accusative, and agree with the Substantive following them: as, exercendæ memoriæ gratiâ, for exercendi memoriam. Nunc tempus adest parandæ eruditioni satis idoneum, or parando eruditionem, or ad parandum eruditionem, or ad parandam eruditionem, and hæc faciunt recuperandorum suorum causâ, or recuperandi sua.

But if the Verb govern not an Accusative case, it is not changed into the Participle in dus, by this Rule; for we do not say, veni huc tui serviendi causâ, but tibi serviendi causâ, because servio hath properly a Dative case after it; yet in the Dative it is read, subservit pedibus mundandis, it serveth to make clean the feet; nor doe we say, ad carendam voluptatem, because careo hath an Ablative; yet in its proper case we may say, in carenda voluptate; nor do we say, ad scribendum te, to write to thee, but ad scribendum ad te, because we say scribere ad te; but scribo as it governeth an Accusative case immediately, may have the Gerund turned into a Participle in dus: as, non omnia ingenia ad res magnas scribendas sunt idonea.

Construction of Supines.

Rule 1.

THE first Supine signifieth actively, and followeth a Verb or Participle, signifying moving to a place.

PRIUS Supinū activè significat, & sequitur verbum, aut Participium, significans motum ad locum.

Inimicus

Construction of Sup.

Inimicus cum blanditur *captatum *venit, when a back-friend speaks fair, he cometh to entrap.

Observations.

1. To after a Verb of moving, is a sign of the first Supine, or Gerund in dum, with ad or Participle of the future in rus, or you may change pour speech by ut, that, as, venit captatum. Venit ad captandum. Venit captaturas, venit ut caperet. Plautus saith, Nulli negare soleo qui esum me vocat. Plaut. Stich. act. 2. Sc. 1. Supple, ire.

2. The first Supine of Neuter Passives, (that is, Verbs Neuters, which in respect of their signification are Passive: as, vapulo, vaneo, liceo, exulo) signifieth passively: as, do venum servos; and when the first Supine is put after do, loco, voco, without a Verb of moving, the Verb is included: as, Pamphilum cantatum provocemus, i. e. venire cantatum. The first Supine joined with iri, signifieth passively, and maketh the future Infinitive in the Passive voice: as, postquam audierat non datum iri uxorem filio, after that he had heard, that she should not be given a wife unto his son.

Actum est, itum est, and cessatum est, are Impersonals.

The later Supine followeth Nouns Adjectives. Rule 2. Posterius supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva.

Nil dictu scdum visucte hæc limina tangat

Construction of Time:

gat intra quæ puer est, Let nothing filthy to be spoken and seen, touch these thresholds, with. in which there is a child or boy.

Observations.

To be, coming next after a Noun Adjective, is a sign of the latter Supine: as, scitu & creditu necessarium, factu optimum mirabile dictu, fas or nefas auditu.

In these sayings, redeo obsonaru, surgat cubitu, redit venatu. The latter Supine is put after Verbs signifying moving from a place, unless they are to be accounted Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

Construction of Time:

Rule 1.

THE limit of time when a thing is done, is uttered in the Ablative case with the sign at. **T**erminus temporis quando quid factum sit, in Ablativo effertur.

Alio quidem atque alio * tempore, omnes in eundem locum tendimus, at one time or another, we all go to the self-same place.

Luce sacrâ requiescat humus, requiescat arator, on the Lords day, &c.

Observation.

By time understand not only hours, days, months, years, and their parts, but other Substan-

Construction of Time.

Substantives denoting the time when: as, icu oculi primo intuitu. Luci, tempore, vesperi, for luce tempore, &c.

Continuance of time is very often used in the Accusative case, and sometimes in the Ablative. Duratio temporis in Accusativo frequentius effertur; interdum & in Ablativo. Rule 2.

Quis totam * diem jaculans non aliquando collineet, Who is it that shooting all the day, may not sometimes hit the mark.

Observations.

1. As part of time is known by answering to the question (when?) so continuance of time is known by answering to the question how long? as, when came he? Tertiâ horâ, at three a clock. How long stayed he? Tres horas, three hours.

2. By the addition sometimes of a Preposition, it is apparent that the construction of time is Ellipticall: as, In paucis diebus, within a few days. De die, by day. De nocte, by night. Promitto in diem, I promise against a day. Commodo in mensem, I lend for a month. Annos ad quinquaginta natus, about fifty years old. Studui per tres annos, I have studied about three years. Puer id ætatis, a boy of that age. Ad tempus, ad diem præscriptum venit, he came at the time appointed. Non plus triduum, or triduo, not more then the space of three days. Tertio Calendarum, i. e. tertio die

Construction of names of places.

die Calendarum, and ad tertium Calendarum (i.e.) ad tertium diem Calendarum, about the third of the Calends. Diem ex die, day after day. Ante sex annos, six years since. And ab hinc sex annos. Also ex illo and ex quo, understand tempore ever since.

In this Rule there is much variety amongst the Latins: as, anno mundi quadringentesimo, supra quatuor millia. Cum esset annorum duodecem. Repente, noctis circiter meridiem. In ante diem quartum, until the fourth day. And ex ante diem. Per idem tempus, intra sex menses, hinc ad triduum. Post meridiem.

3. Luci, tempori, vesperi, are old Ablatives put for luce, tempore, vespere.

Construction of names of Countries, Towns or Cities.

Rule 1.

Names of Countries, Islands, Provinces, and common Nouns, also follow a Preposition.

Nomina regionū, insularum, provinciarum, ut & appellativa, præpositionem sequuntur.

Ex Asiā rediens, returning out of Asia.

Rule 2.

Names of Cities or Towns, which signifie in or at a place, and answer to the question

Urbium nomina quæ in loco significant, & respondent ad quæstionem (ubi) where?

Construction of names of places.

where? if they be of the singular number, and first or second Declension, they are uttered in the Genitive case.

Omnia * Romæ venalia, all things are saleable at Rome.

If the names of Towns or Cities be of the plural number only, or of the third Declension, they are put in the Ablative case.

Si Urbium & opidorū nomina sint pluralis tantum numeri, aut tertiæ Declinationis, in Ablativo ponuntur.

Rule 3. Tituri Carthagini, Anxuri, Sicyoni, are Ablatives.

Haudquaquam difficile est Atheniensem Athenis Laudare, It is no hard matter to praise an Athenian at Athens.

Moving to a place is put in the Accusative case, from a place, or by a place, in the Ablative.

Motus ad locum Rule 4. in Accusativo, à loco aut per locum, in Ablativo ponitur.

Non licet cuivis adire * Corinthum, It is not lawfull for all men to go to Corinth.

Est lupus infestus gregibus, discedite * Romā. The Wolf is hurtful to our flocks, depart from Rome.

Observations:

1. Places are divided into greater places: as, England, Scotland, France, Ireland, Italy, &c. or common places: as, the Market, and all

Q

Construction of names of places.

all Appellatives or common Nouns that signify a place, and these fall under one and the same construction, having usually their Prepositions in, ad, e, ex, ab, per, joyned with them, signifying in, to, from, or by a place: as, ab Aeginæ per Asiam, in urbe in diversorio, in templo, &c. But Petro, to go, is construed always without a Preposition: as, Petere Italiam. Also some other Appellatives sometimes: as, Ibam viâ sacra torâ urbe vagari. Unde redis? Foris. Ubi est præ foribus.

2. Smaller places: as, Towns and Cities contained in those greater: as, London, York, &c. Lugduni habitat? venitne Lugduno?

1. Before the Genitive case in the construction of, at, or in the place, in urbe, or in oppido, seemeth to be understood: as, in oppido Antiochiæ, and sometimes Prepositions are added to the Accusative and Ablative: as, ad Trojam. Apud Thermopylas, per Eboracum, Romam versus, de Brundisio.

M. Hemes.

2. If to the proper name of the place you adde another word: as, in, to, or from the City of York, or at, or from the University of Oxford, you must use a Preposition. Ab Academia Oxoniensi. See pag. 245.

Rule 5.

Rus, humi, domi, militiæ, belli follow the form or construction of proper names.

Rus, humi, domi militiæ, belli, priorum sequuntur formam.

Si

Construction of names of places.

Si urbis tetradium cepit, concede *rus, ^{Proxima} ubi vero ruris, *domum repedes, ^{vicinia} if wea-
rinesse of the City hath caught thee, walk into habitat, & the Countrey; if of the Countrey, returne Terre pro-
home. ^{cumbere,} follow this Rule.

Observations.

1. Rus followeth the construction of to place: as, Ego rus ibo, I will goe into the Countrey. 2. From a place: as, Video rure redeuntem senem, I see the old man returning out of the Countrey. 3. In a place answering to the question (where?) as, rure paterno, at thy fathers Countrey Farm, and senex rus abdidit se.

Also ruri se continet, he keeps himself in the Countrey.

2. Humi, on the ground, followeth the second Rule of at a place in the Genitive: as, humi an sublimi putrescas, quid interest? whether thou rot on the earth, or above the earth, what matters it? which is also sometimes used in the Ablat. case: as, & requievit humo.

3. Domi, at home: 1. followeth the construction of at a place, Rule 2. as, domi fuimus, we have been at home: also abde domo. 2. It followeth the Rule of to a place Rule 4. as, abiit recta domum, he is gone straightway home. 3. It followeth the construction of from a place, Rule 4. as, Unde venis? domo, whence camest thou? from home. 4. Domi, at home, hath onely these Adjectives joyned with it, domi meæ, at my house: domi tuæ, at thy house: domi suæ, at his house: domi nostræ, at our house: domi vestræ,

Q 2

Construction of Præpositions.

vestræ, at your house. Domi alienæ, at another mans house.

4. Militiæ, in war, only followeth the construction of (at a place) as, militiæ fuimus, we have been at war: otherwise it is said, ivit in militiam.

5. Belli, at war, followeth the construction of names of places onely in the Genitive case: as, belli fuimus, we have been in war.

Construction of Præpositions.

Rule 1: **P**ræpositions are often neglected or understood: à, de, è, pro, in,

Quid illud prodest for in or ad quid.

Quid me juvat for in or ad quid.

Rule 2.

A Præposition in composition sometimes governs the case which it governed out of composition: à, ab, am, ex, in, circum, de, inter, præter, super, trans.

* Quem sæpe * transit casus, aliquando invenit, Misfortune at length findeth out him whom it hath often passed over.

Præpositiones sæpe omittuntur.

Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnumquam casum regit, quem ex compositione regbat.

Obse

Construction of Præpositions:

Observation.

Verbs appertaining to this Rule: Supersedeo, insilio, transeo, abstineo, circumspicio, intercino, prætereo, adeo, ambio, amoveo, avertio, abscono, excludo, decedo; but excedo and exilio, are also construed with an Accusative case: as, cum limen exirem, It may be said Mr. Farnaby of ètròs, extra, which is also joyned to an Accusative case.

Sometimes also Redundant quantities Rule 3. Præpositions abound doque & Præpositiones à, ab, ad, con, or are repeated after ones à, ab, ad, con, Verbs compounded with de, è, ex, in, them.

* Advocabo amicos * ad hanc * rem, I will call my friends to this businessse.

Observation.

This Rule and the former answer one the other; the one understanding the Præposition before the casual word coming after the Verb compounded therewith; and the other expressing it; and moreover, because some of the Præpositions in these Rules are the same with those in the construction of the Dative, Rule 21. as, ad preces annuere, ad gratiam admove, It is good to watch unto Authority as is there said. Exiisse de potestate, ex quo eram egressi.

Q 3

Con-

Construction of Conjunctions.

Rule 1.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives: also Exceptives: nisi, præterquam, an, and Electives, quam, ac, atque and nempe, scilicet, videlicet, namely, that is to say, for the most part couple like Cases, Moods and Tenses.

Conjunctiones copulativæ, & disjunctivæ, item exceptivæ, nisi, præterquam, an, & electivæ, quam, ac, atque, & nempe, scilicet, videlicet, similes ut plurimum casus, modos, ac tempora connectunt.

Omnia quæ * gemimus & * ex * pave-
scimus tributa vitæ sunt, All things that we
grieve at, or fear, are the tributes of life.

But sometimes by reason of a divers construction, they couple unlike Cases, Moods and Tenses.

Vixi * Romæ * & * Venetiis, I have lived at Rome and Venice.

Nisi me * lactasses amantem * & vana spe * produceres, but that thou hadst allured me thy lover, and drewest me on with vain hope.

Tibi gratias * ege * & te aliquando colaudare * possum proditores odisse & execrare.

Con-

Construction of Moods.

Ut Englished,

1. That, or as that.

2. Seeing that.

3. Lest that, after metuo, timeo, vereor

4. Grant that, say that, although, requireth a Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 1.

1. Aderam * ut * viderem, I was present that, &c.

2. Non est tibi fidendum ut * qui toties * fefelleris.

3. * Metuebam * ut * subiret. I feared lest that, &c.

4. * Ut * defuit vires tamen est laudanda voluntas, although, &c. Metuo ut verum sit, I fear lest it be not truth.

Ut Englished,

1. After than. 2. How. 3. As, governs Rule 2. an Indicative Mood.

1. * Ut ab urbe * discessi, after that I departed, &c.

2. Cernis ut ignavum corrumpunt oia corpus, Ut capiunt vitium ni moveantur aquæ.

3. * Ut * sunt Gallorum subita & repentina consilia.

Ut Englished, like as.

Ut Englished like as, adhereth to an Indicative Rule 3.

Q 4

tive

Construction of Moods.

tive, or Subjunctive Mood, and it hath that signification, if ita or sic come after it.

Ut, ut tu es, ita omnes censes esse, Like as thou art, so thou supposest all to be.

Cum.

Rule 1. Cum englished, 1. *Whereas.* 2. *Because,* governs an Indicative Mood.

*Tibi maximas gratias ago, * cum tantum mea litera * potuerunt, because my Letter could effect so much, &c.*

Rule 2. Cum englished, 1. *Whenas.* 2. *Because that.* 3. *Seeing that,* oftentimes admitteth a Subjunctive Mood.

1. ** Cum placidum ventis * staret mare, when as the Sea stood, &c.*

2. *Qua * cum ita * sint, which because that, &c.*

3. ** Cum in quo accusabar culpa * vacarem, seeing that I was faultlesse, &c.*

Rule 3. Cum when, hath sometimes an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive Mood. *Cum venit, when he came: cum dabit amplexus, when he shall embrace: cum canerem, when I would sing.*

Dum and Donec.

Rule 1. Dum and Donec, englished so long as, govern an Indicative Mood.

1. ** Dum quod te dignum est * facis.*

2. ** Donec * eram sospes.*

Rule 2. Dum, englished till that, or until, governs

Construction of Moods.

governs an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood.

1. *Tityre * dum * redeo, brevis est via, pasce capellas.*

2. *Qui valuit tamdiu * dum hic * pro-diret.*

Dum, englished so that, governs a Subjunctive Mood. Rule 3.

*Neque id quibus artibus assequeretur, * dum sibi regnum * pararet.*

Ubi, Unde, Quare.

These Interrogatives, *ubi, where? unde, from whence? quare, wherefore? &c.* govern an Indicative Mood. Rule 1.

1. *Ubi est frater, where is thy brother?*

2. *Unde advenis, whence comest thou?*

3. *Quare lachrymaris, why dost thou cry?*

Ubi, when or after that, hath sometimes an Indicative, and sometimes a Subjunctive Mood. Rule 2.

Ubi te non in invenio, when, or after that, &c. hac ubi dicta dedit.

Qui, qua, quod, quis, quid, qualis, quantus, &c.

These when they are not Interrogatives, Rule 2, have commonly a Subjunctive Mood, seldom an Indicative.

1. *Stultus es * qui huic * credas, because thou believest; nec ignorant qui ii sint, who they are.*

** Qui commodissime * navigavissimus, for as*

Construction of Moods.

forasmuch as: *qui neque in urbe *viveret, forasmuch as he, &c. vide *quanta *sit in te suavitas, how great. Siquis me querit; siquis opprobriis dignum latraverit.

Linacri

Est qui, sunt qui, est quando, est ubi, govern both Moods. Sunt quibus in Satyra videar nimis acer.

Rule 1.

1. Priusquam. 2. Antequam. 3. Postquam. 4. Simul ut. 5. Simulac. 6. Simulacque, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood.

Quoad.

Rule 2.

1. Quoad, how long, governs an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Quid? senem *quoad *expectatis vestrum.

2. Quoad, until, governs a Subjunctive Mood only.

Ne.

Rule.

1. Ne, not: 1. To an Imperative. *Ne *fugite hospitium, shun not. 2. To a Subjunctive. *Ne istuc tam iniquo *patiare animo. 3. Sometimes an Indicative, etiam post incubuit ac *Ne nunc quidem subisse *poenitet.

2. Ne, englished but that, or lest that, governs a Subjunctive Mood.

Non, no, nor, or not.

Rule 2.

Non verbereth to all Moods, except the Imperative.

*non *dubitant quin ea vera sint, quæ.

Construction of Moods.

quæ defendunt. *Non *negem si noverim, I would not deny it, if I knew it.

Amo te, & *non *neglexisse, habeo gratiam.

Instead of non, always before the Imperative Mood, and commonly before the Subjunctive, we use ne: and for non fac, sap ne feceris, or noli facere, or cave facias.

Rule 2.

An and Num.

An and Num, englished what? being Particles of asking, govern an Indicative Mood. An ego toties de eadem re audiam? what shall I hear so often, &c.

Num cogitat quid dicat? what doth hee regard or consider what he saith?

An and Num, englished whether or no? being Adverbs of doubting, or put Infinitively, require a Subjunctive Mood. Haud scio an illam nunc miserè amet. Vise num redierit.

An englished, or coupleth like Moods and Tenses. Erravit an insanivit. Iminuatur an desecratur.

1. Quasi, as if. 2. Tanquam, as though. 3. Perinde ac si, as if. 4. Perinde quasi, as if. 5. Ceu, as if, require a Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 1.

*Quasi vero paulum *interfiet. Perinde quasi internecione in humano generi minuentur.

Quasi, tanquam, perinde ac si, perinde quasi.

Rule 2.

Construction of Moods:

quasi, ceu, englished even as, require an Indicative Mood.

Tanquam. Philosophorum habent disciplinæ, exipsis vocabula, even as the disciplines, &c. Quasi si fuisset Davus aliquis qui interturbasset omnia, as if there had bin, &c.

Rule.

1. Etsi, 2. Tametsi, 3. Etiam si, 4. Quamquam, although, have an Indicative Mood in the beginning of the speech, otherwise a Subjunctive.

1. *Etsi suus cuique modus *est, tamen magis offendit nimium quam parum.

2. Omnia brevia tolerabilia esse debent, *etiam si maxima *sint.

3. Quamquam uterque uterur. Quamquam illum cupio abducere.

Rule.

Quando, quandoquidem, and quoniam govern an Indicative Mood.

Rule.

1. Ni. 2. Nisi. 3. Si. 4. Sin. 5. Siquidem. 6. Quod. 7. Quia. 8. Quamvis, admit of an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Quamvis tibi consulis. Gaudeo quod amas, I am glad that thou lovest. Quod englished whereas, is joyned to an Indicative Mood in the beginning of a sentence: as, Quod ad me scribis, whereas thou writest to me. Otherwise it usually hath a Subjunctive Mood, especially if it come after 1, Non est. 2. Nihil est. 3. If it be englished (wherefore) or why.

1. *Non *est *quod moleste *feras.

2. Nihil est quod me invites.

3. Quid est igitur quod amplius dubitemus.

Quia,

Construction of Moods.

Quin, why?

Quin englished why? requireth an Indicative Mood. Quin tu huc advolas? why dost not thou make speed hither? Quin ergo quod juvant, id semper faciunt? why then do they always, &c. Rule 1.

Quin, but that: Licet, albeit, have commonly a Subjunctive Mood.

{1} Quin ita sit.

{2} Licet venias.

Rule 2.

Quippe, for, and quippe, because, put mockingly, hath an Indicative Mood. Quippe vetor fatis, Because I am forbid, &c. Rule 1.

Quippe qui, as one that: utpote qui, as one that, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Rule 2.

Aliis foelicitatem non invidet mundanam, quippe quam minimè desiderat, he doth not grudge other men worldly happiness, as that which he desireth not. Utpote qui peregre depugnavit, as a man that had fought abroad in war.

Utpote cum, and quippe cum, require a Subjunctive Mood only. Rule 3.

Utpote cum laborassem, as when I had been sick.

Quippe cum habeat, forasmuch as, or because it hath, &c.

Quippe ubi impleant, as in which place they sit.

Quod

Particles understood:

Rule.

Quò, to the end that. Modò, so that.
Dummodo, so that. Quo minus, that could
not, govern a Subjunctive Mood.

A concertante in angustias cogitar, quo
minus possit expedite pugnare, that he could
not readily fight.

Quò facilius contineret.

Non quò sit mihi quicquam garius.

Modò ut confisteret fructus otii tui, so
that there may appear some fruit, &c.

Modò id eleganter faciant.

Conjunctions for Conjunctiones
brevity sake are left compendii causâ o-
mituntur.

Rule 1.

Ut is oftentimes understood after these
Verbs, volo, nolo, malo, precor, rogo, oportet,
neceesse est, licet.

Tu velim desinas. Nolim me joculari
putes. Hominem occidat oportet. Licet
facias, licet venias.

Rule 2.

Ut or (quod) is understood after sino,
puto, opinor, credo, arbitror, fateor: as,
Sine videam. Non puto repudiabis in ho-
nore, quem in periculo recipisti.

Rule 3.

Ne is understood after caveo, and after
censeo, suadeo, nuncio, dico, facio, unde
derstand quod, ut, or ne.

Censeo vites, suadeo capias.

Tu fac habeas fortem animum.

Rule 4.

When ne cometh after vereor, metuo, &
timeo.

Figures:

timeo. Non is understood after ne. Ve-
reor ne satis diligenter actum sit, for ne non
satis, &c.

Comma sometimes supplieth the place
of a Conjunction. Rule 5.

Corpus debilitant, balnea, vina, Venus.

Figures.

Prothesis puts to the beginning of a word, that which Aphæresis taketh away. Rule 1.
Prothesis apponit capiti quod Aphæresis aufert.
as, gnatus for natus, conia for ciconia.

Syncope taketh out of the midst, that which Epenthesis brings in: as, Abiit, for abivit. Reliquias, for reliquias. Rule 2.
Syncope de medio tollit, quod Epenthesis infert.

Apocape, taketh away the end, which Paragoge addeth: as, peculi for peculii: dicier for dici. Rule 3.
Aufert Apocape finem, quem dat Paragoge.

Antistoichon is the putting of one letter for another: as, olli for illi. Rule 4.
Antistoichon est literæ pro litera positio.

Hellenismus is when a word is joyned not to that case which Hellenismus est cum dictio, non ei casui jungitur, quem the

Figures:

the propriety of the Latina proprietas
Latine tongue requires exigit, sed quem
but that which the Græca.
Greek doth.

Define mollium tandem querelarum.

Rule 6.

Enallage is the
change of some acci-
dents against the rules
of usual construction.

Enallage est acci-
dentium quorun-
dam, contra usitatæ
constructionis leges
permutatio.

Rule 7.

Archaisme is a rule
of construction in use
with the Ancients
which is now out of
use.

Archaismus est
structuræ ratio vete-
ribus in usu, quæ jam
exolevit.

Quid tibi hanc rem curatio est? Evoca-
tion is when the third person is called to the first
or second, Qui legis hæc. Populus superamur
ab uno.

Finis Libri Quinti.



THE SIXTH BOOK.

Of Letters.

Of Letters, some are Vowels, others
Consonants.

There are five Latin Vowels a, e, i, o, u, for
y is a Greek Vowel put instead of i.

Diphthongs are,

e, æ, au, eu, also ai, ei, oi, ui, yi.

All the rest are Consonants which are di-
vided,

1. Into eight mutes, b, c, d, f, g, p, q, t.
2. Four liquids, l, m, n, r, to which s is
wont to be added; h is rather a note of
breathing, then a letter.

3. Double Consonants are x, z, and j,
betwixt two Vowels: as in major, un-
lesse another i immediately go before it:
as in these words, bijuges, quadrijuges,
multijuges.

4. J and U, are Consonants, when
with another Vowel they make a syllable:
as, va, ve, vi, vo, vu. Ja, je, ji, jo,
ju.

s. Great

5. Great Letters written by themselves,
as set together, note words or numbers.

A. D. id. Octo. ante diem, idus Octobris.

A. V. C. ab urbe condita.

A. Aulus. A. V. amplitudo vestra.

C. Caius

C. M. Caesarea Ma-
jestas

C. V. Celsitudo vestra

Cos. Consul

Coss. Consules

D. Deceius

D. D. dono dedit

E. T. Excellentia tua

G. Gaius.

Ex. Gr. Exempli
Gratia

H. S. Sestertius

J. C. Juris consuli

L. Lucius

L. L. S. duo asses, vel
duae librae & se-
missis.

L. L. Lingua Latina

M. Marcus

Ms. Manuscriptum

N. Nota. N. B. Nora
bene

N. T. Novum Testa-
mentum

P. Publius

P. C. Patres conscri-
pti

P. L. Poëta Laurea-
tus.

P. R. Populus Roma-
nus.

Q. Quintus, Quæstor
Quirites

R. P. Res publica, Re-
gis professor

R. R. Re rustica

S. Sanctus

S. S. sacro sanctus

S. C. Senatus Consul-
tus

S. P. Spurius, *also* spi-
ritus sanctus.

Sex. Sextus

S. P. D. Salutem plu-
rimam dicit

S. P. Q. R. Senatus
Populusque Ro-
manus

T. Titus

T. C. Tua Clemen-
tia.

Ves

Verifying Rules:

OF Syllables are made Feet: of Feet bound together by a right and convenient number, are made Verses. *Ex syllabis fiunt Rule 1. pedes: ex pedibus iusto atque legitimo numero constrictis, fiunt Carmina.*

Feet of two Syllables.

1. Spondee, consisting of two long syllables: as, virtūs.
2. Iambus consisting of a short and a long: as, amāns.
3. Trocheus or Chorus, consisting of a long and a short: as, collē.

Feet of three Syllables.

1. Dactylus, consisting of three syllables, whereof the first is long, and the other two are short: as, mittēre.
 2. Anapæstus, consisting of the first two short, and the last long: as, piētās.
 3. Tribachus, consisting of three short syllables: as, dōminē.
- A long syllable is thus noted -, but a short one thus °.

Verses most used in Schools are,

1. Versus

Verifying Rules.

1. *Versus Heroicus.*

Rule.

This Verse consisteth of Dactyls and Spondeys only.

The Laws in making thereof are,

The fifth foot must be a Dactyle, the sixth a Spondee, the other four Dactyls or Spondeys at our pleasure: and this Verse is also called *Hexameter*.

Lōngā diēs hōmīnī docuit parērē lēonēs.

Observations:

1. All Verses run best where the feet are linked the one with the other, that is, when the word following helpeth to make up the foot of the word before: as,

Mēns hābitāt sōliōquē sedēt rēgālītēr āltō.

2. The feet in this kind of Verse will be unlinked most fitly, first before the second foot, and fourth: as,

*Corporis * est expers, qui * corpora cuncta creavit.* And also before the last: as, *Omnia quæ vivunt & quæ * viventia non sunt. Nonne perire brevi mortalia cuncta videtis?*

3. A Spondee and a Dactyle, or two Spondeys and a Dactyle, begin this Verse pleasantly.

Cōntēplābār itēm multos furtōque dolōque ditatos, or a Penthemimer. Qui sibi quod satis est operat, nil cætera curat.

Dēcēptūs fālsā spēcīe verique bonique.

4. Epithets are elegantly set before their Substantives, and if the Verse do consist

Verifying Rules.

consist of two Adjectives, two Substantives and a Verb only, the first Adjective agreeing with the first Substantive, the second with the second, and the Verb placed in the midst, it is called a Golden Verse: as, *Lurida terribiles miscens aconita noverca.*

Pendula flaventem pingebat bractea crenem.

5. Sometimes but very seldom a Spondee is found in the first place.

Sic costam longo subduximus Apennino.

6. In making Verses avoid Rhimes: as, *Singula spectando ventos superare volando.*

Nutrix dum rotat, canit & cunabula morat.

Ebibe sac totum, si vis cognoscere potum

2. *Versus Pentameter.*

The Pentameter Verse consisteth of five feet, divided into two parts; the former whereof doth comprehend two feet, Dactyls, Spondeys, or either of them, with a long syllable; the other also of two feet, but altogether Dactyls with a long syllable: as,

Tārdiūs autē prōpiūs || mōrs suā quēmquē manēt.

Observation.

Let the Pentameter Verse end with a word of two syllables, and that either with a Verb or a Substantive, or meus, tuus, suus, and not with an idle Epithete or Adjective.

Sic

Versifying Rules.

Sit nox cum somno || sit sine lite dies.
 Detinere oculos || carmina nostra tuos.
 Sometimes it ends with a word of
 three syllables: as,
 Hac fuerint nobis || præmia si placui.

3. Versus Adonius.

Rule.

The Adonick Verse consists of a Dactyl,
 and a Spondee: as,
 Ocior aurâ: Crine decorum.

4. Versus Archilochius.

Rule.

This Verse consists of two Dactyls, and
 a syllable.
 Ripa beata Tagi. Jugera pauca soli.

5. Versus Glyconicus.

A Glyconick Verse consists of a Spondee
 and two Dactyls: as,
 Sic te Diva potens Cypri.

6. Versus Asclepiadæus.

Rule.

An Asclepiad Verse consists of a Spondee,
 Dactyl, and a long syllable, and then of
 two Dactyls.
 Mæcenæ atavis || edite regibus.

7. Versus Sapphicus.

Rule.

A Sapphick Verse consists of a Trochee,
 Spondee, Dactyl, and then of two Trocheys,
 and after each three Verses an Adonick is
 added. Integer

Versifying Rules.

Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus,
 Non eget Mauri, jaculis nec arcu,
 Nec venenatis grævîda sagittis
 Fulce phœetra.

8. Versus Phalæsius.

A Phalæcean Verse consists of a Spondee, Rule,
 Dactyl, and three Trocheys, and ends most
 commendably with words of two syllables.

Vitam quæ faciunt beatiorẽ.
 Summum nec metuas diem nec optes:

9. Versus Iambicus.

First, a pure Iambick Verse consists only Rule,
 of Iambicks: as,

Suis et ipsa Rómâ viribus ruit.

Secondly, the Iambick Verse in pure-
 nesse next to this, is that which hath Spon-
 deys mixed with Iambicks, the one after the
 other: as,

Ius est in armis opprimit leges timor.

Nam fera non est ad bonos mores via.

Thirdly, if the two last Feet exchange
 places, then the Iambick halteth, and is
 called Sæzon.

Ducētiēs accēpit et tamēn vivit.

Fourthly, the lesse pure Iambicks re-
 ceive in the first, third, and fifth place, called
 odde places, both a Iambick, Spondee, Ana-
 pæst, Dactyl, and Tribrack, but seldom, and
 not two Tribracks in the same Verse. More-
 over in the second, fourth, and sixth places,
 which are called even places, it receiveth

Versifying Rules.

a *Jambick* and one *Tribrick*, but not in the last seat; and it ~~is~~ meet that this Verse have in it alway two *Jambicks*.

*Cecidere fratres? arma non servant mo,
dum,*

*Nec temperari facile, nec reprimi potest
Stricti ensis ira. Bella delectat cruor,*

Observation:

The *Jambick Verse* is divided into two kinds, *Dimeter* or *Quaternary*, which consists of four feet: as,

*Suis peribit artibus
Scelerata fraus et incidit
In ipsa cœci rēia, &c.*

2. *Trimeter*, or *Senary*, which consists of six feet: as,
Sequitur superbus ultor a tergo Deus.

Poetical Figures:

In measuring and setting together of a Verse, Poets use certain figures, which notwithstanding by young Versifiers ought to be shunned as rocks.

Rule.

1. *Synalapha*.

Synalapha is the cutting off of a vowel before another in divers words: as,

*Sera nimis vit' est crastina, viv' hodie,
for vita est, and vive hodie.*

Ob'er.

Versifying Rules.

Observations.

2. *Syneresis*.

1. Sometimes there is a cutting away or pressing together of Vowels in the same word by *Synecphonesis*, contracting them into one, & so sounding them, which is also called *Syneresis*: as, *dehinc* cui, *huic*, *deest* being made one syllable, & *deinde*, *codem*, *genua*, *anteit*, *aurea*, *alveo* two syllables, *ariete* *pituita*, three syllables, *alvearia* *graveolentis* *semianimis* four syllables.

2. *Heu* & *O*, are never cut off: as, *O ego quantum egi*, & *ah*, *hei*, *io*, & *cui* contracted.

3. *O* & other long Vowels in imitation of the Greeks before another Vowel are not cut off, but become common.

*Stant et juniperi et castanea hirsuta
Credimus? an qui amant ipsi sibi omnia
fingunt.*

4. A Diphthong or long Vowel is more harsh or rough to be cut off, than a short before a long one.

3. *Diarexis*.

As *Syneresis* contracteth two syllables into one, so on the contrary *Diarexis* dissolveth or divideth one syllable into two: as, *dissolvienda* for *dissolvenda*. *Aula* for *aula*, *sylva* for *sylva*.

Rule.

R

4. *Ectho*

4. *Ecthlipsis.*

Rule. *Ecthlipsis*, is when *m* with his vowel is cut off; the next word beginning with a vowel or *h*: as,

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, cui lumen ademptum, for monstrum horrendum.

5. *Casura.*

Casura is when after an absolute foot, a short syllable in the end of a word is made long, which after the first foot is called a *Triemimer*, after the second a *Penthemimer*, after the third a *Hepthemimer*, and after the fourth an *Ennehemimer*.

Omnia vincit *amor & nos cedamus *amori*: if otherwise a long syllable be made short, it is by *Systole*: as, *Obstupui steteruntque comæ*, for *steterunt*; or a short syllable long, it is by *Diastrale*: as, *in quem recidimus*.

General Rules of the quantity of Syllables.

Rule 1. A Vowel before two Consonants, or a double Consonant in the same word or divers, is long by Position.

Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eadem dictione, vel diversis positione longa est.

Multa cadunt inter calicem supremamque labra.

Obser

Observation.

1. A mute with the liquid *l*, or *r*, in the same * *m* & *n* syllable, make a short vowel going before *Græcis per*. their common: as, *patris, retro, volucris*; but *mutantur*. if the word be long by nature, it cannot be changed short: as, *arātrum simulācrum, ācrem, mātris, ātrum*.

2. If the former word ends with a short vowel, & the next word begin with two consonants, it is not a *Position*, but *Diastrale*: as, *Occultā spolia*; to be declined.

A vowel before another in divers syllables of the same word, is everywhere short: as, *Deus, filius, tuus*.
Vocalis ante vocalem in diversis syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubique brevis est.

Rule 2

Exceptions.

1. Except these *Genitives* in *ius*, *illius*, *ipsius*, *istius*, *unius*, *ullius*, *nullius*, where *i* is found common. *Totius, solius, utrius, neutrius, alterutrius*, are very seldom short; *i* in *alterius* is always short, *i* in *alius* is always long.

Fastidiret olus qui me notat utrius horum, *Hor. Ep. 17. v. 15*.

2. The *Genitive* & *Dative* cases of the first Declension, where *e* between double *i*, is made long: as, *diēi, speciēi*, otherwise *e* before *i* is short: as, *fidēi*.

3. Except *Vocative* cases of proper names in *ei* and *ai*: as, *Pompēi, Vultēi, Cāi*, & *Geni-*

R 2

Versifying Rules.

Genitives of the first Declension dissolved :
aulāi, for aulæ, pictāi, for pictæ.

4. Fi in fio, is long : as, fiunt, fiet, except e and r, follow together : as in fierem, fieri.

5. In Greek words one vowel before another is sometimes long : as, ær, Galatæa, Menelæus, Lycæon, Orïon, Amphïon, Ilionæa; and in chorea, and in Platæa, χορεία πλατεια; also Possessives in -eius and -oïus, and of words ending in -ous, have e and o long : as, Rhodopæius, Achelôius, Latôus, Eôus, Arctôus.

Rule 3.

Every Diphthong is long : as, aurum, ætas, neuter, coelum, yet præ a vowel following is short : as, præcuræ, præustis, Rhodopæar arces, Græcorum more.

Omnis Diphthongus longa est : ut, aurum, ætas, neuter, coelum. Præ tamen sequente vocali corripitur, præcuræ, præustis.

Rule 4.

A syllable contracted of two is long : as, cogo for coago, tibi-cen for tibiicem, it for iit, perit of petiit, and obit and abit of obiiit and abiit.

Syllaba ex duabus contracta producta.

Rule 5.

Derivatives are allotted the same quantity with their Primitives : as, a in amicus is short, of a in amo short.

Derivativa eandem cum Primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur : ut, amicus ab amo, legi, legeram, legerim, legissem, legero, legisse.

Versifying Rules!

Exceptions.

Words made long which are derived of short ones.

dēnus of dēcem
hūmanus of hōmo
jūcundus of jūvo
jūgerum of jūgum
jūnior of jūvenis
lātēna of lātēo
lēx lēgis of lēgo
lītēra of lītūra
mācēro of mācer
nōnus of nōvem
pēnuria of pēnus.

rex rēgis
and
rēgula } of rēgo
fēcūs of fēcūs
fēdes of fēdeo
suspicio, ōnis of suspicor
tēgula of tēgo
vōmer of vōmo
vox vōcis of vōco.

Words made short which are derived of long ones.

ārena } of āreo
ārista }
cūrūlis of cūrro
dīcax of dīco
dīsērtus of dīsēro
dux, dūcis of dūco
fārīna of fārro
frāgor, }

frāgilis } of frāngo
lūcerna of lūceo
māmilla of mamma
nāto, nāras of nātu
nōta of nōtu
ōfella of ōffa
pāgella of pāgina

pōsui of pōno
quāfīllus of quālus
sāgax of sāgio
sigillum of signum
sōpor of sōpio
sōlutum of sōlvo
tīgillum of tīgno
vārīcosus of vārīx
vōlūtum of vōlvo
stātio
stātus
stābilis } of stātum.
fīdelis }
fīdes } whence
fīdus, infīdus, fīdūcia.

R 3

Words

Verifying Rules:

Rules

Words compounded follow the quantity of simple or uncompound-
ed words. Composita simplicium quantitatem sequuntur, ut lēgo lēgis, perlēgo à lēgo.

Except these short of long.

Innūba, } of nū-	Cognitum, } of nō-
Pronūba, } bo.	Agnitum, } tam.
	Præstiturus, } of stā-
Connubium, com-	Restiturus, } turus.
mon.	Causidicus } of dīco.
Dejēro } of jū-	Maledicus } of hīlum.
Pejēro } ro.	Nihilum, of hīlum.
Siquidem, of si.	Semiotopitus, of iōpi-
Hodie, of hoc die.	tus.

And on the contrary, this long of short, im-
bēcillus, of bāculus.

1. Words compounded with these Particles; 1. Bi: as, biceps. 2. Tri: as, triceps. 3. tre: as, trecenti. 4. Du: as, dūcenti, have them short, except tri in triduum, which is long.

2. Words that are compounded with Verbs, the first part ending in e, have e short: as, tremēfecit, of tremo facio: repēfecit, of tepeo facio, & so valēdixit, labēfactus, tremēfactus, liquēfactus.

3. These are long of the simple words which are common, ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quandoque, quāndocūque, but quāndocūidem is short.

4. I in idem masculine is long, i in idem Neuter, is short.

Special

Verifying Rules.

Special Rules of first Syllables.

A Preposition in composition retains his quantity, unless position, or a vowel following hinder: as in sup-
primo, deamo, dehi-
scens. Præpositio in cō-
positis suam retinet
quantitatem. Nisi
positio aut vocalis
sequens impediāt.

A, de, se, e, are long; also Prepositions which end in a, are long: as, contra, supra, infra, &c. A, de, se, e, produ-
cuntur. Producun-
tur etiam Præpositi-
ones quæ exeunt in
a, ut contra, supra, in-
fra, &c. tra of trans. Rule 1. Rule 2.

1. Di is long, except in dirimo, and dīser-
tus.

2. Pro also is long, except in these short: Procello, procella, prōfugus, prōtervus, prōnēpos, prōfanus, prōfundus, prōfiscor, prōfari, prōpero, prōfugio, prōfecto, prōfestus. And in these commune, procum-
bo, procūro, profundo, propello, propulso, propago, the Noun & Verb.

3. Greek words compounded with pre-
are short: as, Prōpheta, prōlogus, Prō-
mētheus, but pro in propino is commune.

The residue of Pre- Reliquæ præposi- Rule 3.
positions if position give tiones, ab, ad, ante, in,
leave, are short: as, ob, inter, per, re, su-
circūmagāt mādī- per, sub, circū, si posi-
dās, &c. tio finat, corripitur.
aperio,

R 4

Versifying Rules.

aperio, operio, omitto, have the first syllable short.

Re is short, unless in reſert, compounded of the Penult. re.

Rule 4. One hath the first syllable commune, ehu long. One priorem habet communem, eheu longam.

Rule 5a. Every Preterperfect Tense and Supine of two syllables, hath the former long: as, vidi, legi, mortum, visum. Omne Præteritum & Supinum dissyllabum priorem habet longam.

Except ſidi of ſindo, bîbi, dēdi, ſcīdi, ſtēri, tūli, and these Supines, quītum, sīrum, lītum, itum, rūtum, rātum, dātum, sātum, and cīrum of cieo cies.

Bi in ambitus the Participle is long, but in ambitus and ambitio Substantives, short.

Supines of many syllables, have the last save one long: as, amātum, peritum, divisum, solūtum, indūtum, except Supines in itum, when the Preterperfect Tense doth not end in ivi: as, genitum, cubitum, venditum, monitum.

Verbs doubling the first syllable of the Preterperfect Tense, have the first syllable likewise short: as, tētendi, cēcidi, tētegi, and the second also except position hinder: as, tūtūdi, dīdīci, but pēpēdi of pēdo, cēcīdi of cado are long.

Rules

Versifying Rules.

Rules that pertain to middle syllables (that is) to syllables between the first and the last.

The last syllable save one in words of many syllables increasing long, is long; and in Nouns increasing short is short: as, virtus virtutis, sanguis sanguinis. Penultima in polysyllabis acutè crescentibus, productur, & in graviter crescentibus corripitur, or Ex incremento Genitivi. ** For pēdis of pes, and vādīs of vas is short; so grēgis of grex.*

1. A, e, and o, in the last syllable save one of Genitives plural are long: as, musarum, dierum, dominorum.

2. A, o, and e, o, in the last syllable save one of Datives plural are long: as, natibus, diebus, duobus, but i and u are short: as, partibus, fructibus, partibus, veribus.

Ex analogia Conjugationum.

1. A of the first, e of the second, i of the fourth Conjugation are long before re and ris, and e of the third short: as, amare, docere, legere, audire.

2. Da in dāmus, circundāmus, dābis, circundābis, dāre, circundāre, of do and the Compounds thereof, when it is of the first Conjugation is short.

3. A and e before ham and ho are long: as, amāham, docēbo.

E before ram, rim, ro, is short: as, legēram, legērim, legēro; e in the third person plural of the Preterperfect Tense Indicative is long: as, legērunt or legēre.

R. 5

Præter-

Verifying Rules.

4. *Preterperfect Tenses* in *vi*, & *si*, have the last syllable save one long: as, amāvi, quīēvi, quāsi, divīsi, audīvi.

5. *U* in *ūrio* in *Desideratives*, is short: as, partūrio, cūrio, for scarūrio & ligūrio, are not *Desideratives*, and therefore *u* is produced.

The syllables *ri* in *rimus*, & *ri* in *ritis*, are in the *Preterperfect Tense Subjunctive* short, in the *Future* common in verse, but in prose long. Amāverimus, amaveritis, amaverimus, amaveritis.

Lilly.

6. *Adjectives* in *ino*, have *i* in *ino* short; as, inquīno, contaminō, destinō, but *Neuters* long: as, festīno, inclinō, propīno.

Rule 2.

Adjectives ending in inus, *Adjectiva in inus* in *inus*, make the last syllable save one long: as, producant penultimam.

as,

clandestīnus, matutīnus, vespertīnus.

1. *Except Adjectives signifying time*: as, diutīnus, crastīnus, pristīnus, perendīnus, hornotīnus, serotīnus.

2. *Adjectives of some matter*: as, oleagīnus, sagīnus, cedrīnus.

3. *Adjectives derived of Greek Nouns, signifying metals*: as, crystallīnus, myrrhīnus, adamantīnus, &c.

Rule 3.

Adjectives in anus, *Adjectiva in anus* in *anus*, produce the last syllable save one: as, arūs, orūs, ōsus, arūs, orūs, ōsus, producant penultimam.

Montānus, avārus, canōrus, odiōsus.

Ad.

Verifying Rules:

Adverbs in itim, *Adverbia in itim*, Rule 4: and *itim*, produce the last syllable save one: as, penultimam.

Ostiatim, *viratim*, *creptatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim* short,

1. *Diminutives in* *ulus*, *ulus*. 2. *Verbals* in *ilis*, and *bilis*; and *Adverbia in itus*, have the last syllable save one short.

As, arceolus, unciola, regulus, camicula, corculum, facilis, flebilis, funditus, coctus. *Adjectives in aceus* have a long: as, cre- *Linacer*, taceus, hordaceus; arūs, āta, ātum, as, pri- vātus; āculus, ācula, āculum; as, vernācu- lus, novācula, habitāculum: ālis, āle; as, animalis, focāle, and āmen, as, exāmen.

Authority, use, or Example.

Authority is the testimony & warrant of the most approved Poets, which of all is the surest Rule.

Of last Syllables.

A finita producuntur.

1. *Nominatives, Accusatives and Vocatives*, ending in *a*, have a short: as, musā, regnā, temporā.

2. *Vocatives of Greek Nouns in as*, are long: as, Aneā of Aeneas.

3. *Ablatives in a* of the first Declension are long:

Verifying Rules.

long : as, musâ, bonâ, illâ, quâ.

4. Eiâ, itâ, quâ, have a short

5. The rest ending in a are long : as, amâ, contrâ, trigintâ, quadragintâ, and others in gintâ, which usually have a long.

In B, D, T. finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in b, d, t, if a vowel follow, are short : as, ab, ad, caput.

C finalis longa est.

Words ending in c have c long : as, ac, fac, sic and hic the Adverb. Two words ending in c are short, nec and donec : hic and hoc are common ; so that it be not the Ablative case, to which some adjoin fac.

E finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in e are short : as, mare, legē, penē.

1. Words of the first Declension ending in e are excepted : as, rē, diē, long.

2. Adverbs in e compounded of them : as, hodiē, quodiē, pridē, quare, to which adde famē long.

3. The second persons singular of the Imperative Mood of Active form in the second Conjugation : as, docē, movē, manē, cavē, long.

4. Words of one syllable in e are long : as, mē, tē, sē, except quē, nē, vē, when they are Enclitic Conjunctions, and Syllabic Adjections, cē, rē, ptē : as, hiscē, rutē, tuoptē.

5. Adverbs in e derived of Adjectives of the

Verifying Rules.

the first and second Declension : as, pulchrē, doctē, valdē, for valide, are long, to which adde firmē, ferē and ohē, but benē, malē and magē are short.

6. Greek words written with η are long by nature : as, Lethē, Anchisē, Tempē.

I finita longa sunt.

Words ending in i are long : as, dominī, amari, cristī.

1. Except mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, and cui of two syllables, which are common ; sicubi is short, alibi is long.

2. Nisi and quasi are short.

3. Datives and Vocatives of the Greeks, whose Genitive case singular ends in os short : as, Dat. Daphnidī, Voc. Daphnī, are short ; except Datives contracted of ei : as, Ulissi, or that they are declined after the Latine forme : as, Orestī, Pyladī, Paridī, long.

L finita corripuntur.

Words ending in L are short, if position hinder not : as, mēl, Annibāl, pugil, exul.

Except Sāl, sōl, nīl, and some Hebrew words : as, Michaēl, Gabriēl, Raphaēl, Daniēl.

N finita producuntur.

Words ending in n, are long : as, nōn, quīn, Præn.

1. Except

Jacob,
Job,
David,
long.

Verifying Rules.

1. Except in with these forſān, forſwān, ān, tamēn, aſtamēn, veruntamēn, which are ſhort.

2. Words abridged by Apocope: as, vidēn' for vidēſne, nemon' for nemone, ain' for aiſne, egōn' for egone, ſatīn' for ſaiſne, exīn' for exinde, ſubīn' for ſubinde, deīn' for deinde, proīn' for proinde, which are ſhort.

3. Nouns in en, whoſe Genitive caſe hath īnis ſhort: as, carmēn carmīnis, crimen crimīnis, pedēn pedīnis, are ſhort.

4. Greek Nouns in on, written with ſittle o, as, Iliōn, Peliōn, have on ſhort.

5. Greek Accuſatives in in with i or y, are ſhort: as, Alexīn. Ityn.

6. Greek Accuſatives in an of Nominatives in a are ſhort: as, Aeginān.

Majān but of Nominatives in as are long; as, Aeneān, Marſiān.

O finita Communia ſunt.

Words ending in o are commune: as, porro, legendo, amo, virgo.

1. Datives and Ablatives in o are long: as, dominō, ſervō.

2. Adverbs derived of Adjectives: as, primō, falſō, are long, & eō with the compounds adeō, ideō, &c. are ſeldome ſhort.

3. Sedulō, mutuō, crebrō, are common, & ſerō, which notwithstanding is very often ſhort.

4. Citō, cedō, engliſhed ſay it, & modō, with the compounds quomodō, dummodō, poſtmodō, are ſhort.

5. Words

Verifying Rules.

5. Words of one ſyllable in o, are long: as, do, ſto, and ergō for cauſā.

6. Ambo, duo, ego, homo, ſcio, nescio, imo, illico, are ſcarce read long.

7. Greek words written with o, or great o, as, Sapphō, Didō, Androgeō, Apollō, Athō, are long, except they are made of Greek words in av, n being caſt away: as, Leō, Platō, which for the moſt part are ſhort.

R finita corripuntur, ſi poſſit ſinat.

Words ending in r are ſhort: as, neſtār, pēr, vir, uxor, turtūr, cōr, which notwithstanding is once read long.

1. Except ſār, lār, nār, vēr, ſūr, cūr, and par, with the compounds compār, impār, long, and diſpār, which notwithstanding is ſometimes read ſhort.

2. Greek words in np, are long: as, aēr, cratēr, charactēr, but patēr and matēr with the Latins have er ſhort.

As finita producuntur.

Words ending in as, are long: as, amās, muſās, bonitās.

1. Except thoſe whoſe Genitive caſe ſingular make ādis, as, vās vādīs. Pallās, Pallādīs, which are ſhort. Peliās haſta poteſt, Ov. lib. 13.

2. Accuſatives plural of Greek Nouns of the third Declenſion: as, Phyllidās, heroās, are ſhort, to which adde anās, anātis.

Es

Verifying Rules:

Es finita longa sunt.

Words ending in *es*, are long: *as*, *vestēs*, *diēs*, *docēs*.

1. Except Nominatives in *es* of the third Declension, which increase short in the Genitive case: *as*, *milēs*, Gen. *militis*: *seges*, *divēs*, &c. are short, but *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Gerēs*, and *pēs*, with the Compounds: *as*, *bipēs*, *tripēs*, *quadrupēs*, are long.

2. *Es* of sum, together with the Compounds, *abēs*, *adēs*, *obēs*, *prodēs*, is short, to which add *penēs*.

3. Neuters and Nominatives plural of the Greeks: *as*, *Hippomenēs*, *Cacoethēs*, *Cyclopēs*, *Naidēs*, are short.

Is finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in *is* are short: *as*, *panis*, *tristis*, *hilaris*, if a vowel follow.

1. Except Datives and Ablatives plural which are long: *as*, *musis*, *dominis*, *templis*.

2. Nominatives in *is*, which increase long in the last syllable save one of the Genitive case are long: *as*, *Samnis*, *Salamis*, Genitive *Samnitis*, *Salaminis*.

3. Second persons singular of the Present Tense Indicative in the fourth Conjugation, are long: *as*, *audis*, *venis*, to which add *sis*, *vis*, *velis*, *nolis*, *malis*, and *possis*, however once read short.

4. Words of one syllable in *is*, are long: *as*, *vis*, *lis*, but *is*, *bis*, and *quis*, the Nominative are short.

Verifying Rules:

5. Is of Greek words in *is*, is long: *as*, *Pyrois*, *Simois*.

6. The Adverbs *foris* and *gratis*, are long.

7. *Ris* in the Future Tense Subjunctive is very often short, nor is it made long but by Casura.

Os finita producantur.

Words ending in *os* are long: *as*, *honos*, *nepos*, *dominos*.

1. Except compounds, *impōs* and *ōs*, *offis*, which are short.

2. Greek Nouns written with little *o*, are short: *as*, *Delos*, *Chaos*, *Pallados*.

Vs finita corripuntur.

Words ending in *us* are short: *as*, *dominus*, *honus*, *tempus*, *amamus*, if a vowel follow.

1. Except words of one syllable: *as*, *cras*, *thus*, *mus*, are long.

2. Nominatives in *us*, increasing long in the Genitive case are long: *as*, *salus*, *virtus*, Genitive *salutis*, *virtutis*.

3. Genitives singular, and Nominatives, Accusatives and Vocatives plural of the fourth Declension are long: *as*, Gen. *fructus*, Plur. Nom. Acc. voc. *fructus*.

4. Words in *us* that are made of Greek Nouns in *ous*, are long: *as*, *panthus*, *Saphus*, except *Oedipus* and *Polypus* of the second Declension.

Ys finita corripuntur.

Words ending in ys are short, if a vowel follow, as, Capys, Tiphys.

V finita producuntur omnia.

All words in u are long.

Y finita corripuntur.

Words ending in y are short: as, Moly, Tiphy.

Ultima cuiusque versus syllaba censetur communis.

The last syllable of every verse is accounted common.

T E Λ Ο Σ.

Μόνῃ σοφῶ Θεῷ σωτῆρι ἡμῶν δέξα
καὶ μεγαλωσύνῃ, κράτῳ καὶ ἐξουσίᾳ,
καὶ νῦν, καὶ εἰς πάντας τὰς αἰώνας.

Απὸ τοῦ Ἰσά. V. 25.

Some

Some common Observations concerning the Composition of the Latin speech.

1. **T**O write in a grave and lofty style, many feet consisting of long syllables are needful. Quam nugax hæc nostra est ætas? ad ejus non salutem modo extinguendam, sed etiam gloriam per tales viros infringendam, but in lighter matters short syllables.

2. There ought to be such a mixture of short words with long, that many of the one or other be not continued together, as in this sentence. Homo etsi sine peccato esse possit, nemo tamen est qui sit, which runneth not so smoothly, because words of one and two syllables are condensed; otherwise thus: sine peccato etiamsi mortalis esse possit, est tamen qui sit nemo.

3. Words of many syllables are elegantly lockt up with a period: as, veritatem nescio quâ injuriâ multavit exilio, and let not the same foot too often begin or end a sentence, lest it beget a loathing dislike.

4. A frequent concourse or joining together of the same letters, is to be eschewed: as, æquora tuta tacent, spuma maris risit, and ὁμοιοτέλετον, and if may be, when the one word endeth with a Consonant, let the following word begin with a Vowel, and contra: as, è cuius ore melle dulcior effluebat oratio, in all which, easynesse of pronunciation; and ear-delectation will be an impartial Judge, κακοφωνίας.

Allowed

*Allowed quantities wherewith
to begin.*

1. Molossus or three long : as, si quis iudices.
2. Creticus or amphimacer, that is, one long, a short and a long - - as, quid precatus.
3. Pæan primus, or one long and three short : - - - as, paucā sup̄ hāc rē.
4. Dochimus, or five syllables, (viz.) one Iambick and Amphimacer, - - - - as, novæ criminationes.
5. Ditrochæus, - - - - as, si quis antea
6. Anapestus - - - as, animadverti iudices.

Allowed quantities wherewith to close, are

1. Creticus set before two Trocheys - - - - as, gloriā cōparant.
2. Choreus before molossus - - - - as, membra firmanur.
3. Dochimus - - - - as, reipublicæ.
4. An Iambick and two Spondeys - - - - as, reum cōdēmnarunt.
5. Pæan primus, - - - - with a Spondee following : as, esse videtur.

Some special Rules.

M. Clark.

1. Adjectives ought usually to be set before their Substantives, one or more words intervening, especially the latter of two Substantives : as, strenuus pudicitæ propugnator.

2.A

2. A Relative is elegantly set before his Noun and Verb : as, Quem cum isto sermonem hebueris procul stans accepi.

3. The Pronouns meus, tuus, suus, &c. are very often set after their substantives : as, Gravi teste privatus sum, amoris summi erga te mei.

4. Nouns Negatives : as, nemo nullus, and omnis are with a grace set after their Substantives : as, qui vitiis careat invenimus neminem quæ peragendi dedisti perfeci omnia.

5. Oblique cases elegantly begin an Oration, and Verbs usually close periods. Toto cœlo errarunt, qui, ut pueri Regulas Grammaticales memoriter repetant, exegerunt : nunquam vero eadem cum curâ sunt annixi ut perspicue concipiant. M. Horn.

6. Participles and Gerunds, also Comparatives gracefully close the sentence : as, Diu sum equidem reluctatus. Tua societate nihil gratius. Laborum fructus est longe maximus.

7. After the Superlative the Comparative of the same Noun is elegantly placed, as, Cum multi doctrinam per se libentissimè desiderant, tu hoc libentius quod honores habet concomitantes.

8. The person acting is to be set next before the person suffering : as, Magnam Cæsar Pompeio injuriam fecit.

9. Adverbs and Prepositions together with their cases which they govern, may there be set where they best sound, but with most elegance Adverbs are to be placed before their Participles and Verbs : as, severitatem diuque dilatam, clementissime mitigavit.

10. Ante-

10. Antequam, priusquam, and postquam, perinde-quasi, are by Tmesis divided: as, Omnia prius verbis experiri, quàm armis sapientem decet, is perinde rem refert quasi si ex eo solo mulcentur homines.

— ἐδὲ γὰρ ὁ Ζεὺς
"Οὐδ' ὕαν πάλαι ἀνδάν, ἔτ' ἀνέχων.

Master

Mr HORNS

RULES to the same purpose.

1. **A**N Adjective of two syllables is to be set after a Substantive of many syllables: as, indies oriuntur contentiones novæ.
2. An Adjective is elegantly put after Substantives of multitude: as, Sceleratos omnes Catalina unus superavit.
3. Adjectives of many syllables are beautifully placed in the beginning and end: as, miserimi sunt omnes inglorii.
4. The Ablative case absolute is either to be set before the Verb, or at the beginning of the sentence: as, Re intellectu in verborum usu faciles esse debemus.
Omnes ingruente miseriâ, percelluntur timore.
5. Comparatives and Superlatives are elegantly set after their Substantives: as, Prætoris iniquissimi sævitia: Adulatio reprehensione deterior.
6. Comparatives are elegantly set in the beginning, and also at the end of a sentence: as, Celebris est ingenium, cuius motus sunt veloces, siudem sunt honestiores.
7. Proper names of many syllables, grace the beginning of a Period: as, Antiochia urbs nobilis.
8. An Adjective signifying the praise or dispraise, is set before the proper name: as, Magnus ille Pompeius.

9. The

M. Horns Rules:

9. The Verb (est) in the beginning of a sentence is put after the first word, but after a Comparative it is placed in the end.

Nostra est enim consuetudo,
Oratio sine fūco gratioꝛ est.

10. The Infinitive Mood is set before the Verb: as, In pueris oratio perfecta nec exigi, nec sperari potest.

11. Adverbs are to be set after Adjectives, or if before them something is to be inserted: as, eximiè quidem insolentes superborum sermōes.

*Alter alterius sic poscit opem
res.*



A S Y N O P S I S of Master L I L L I E S G R A M M A R.

Verbum personale cohaeret cum, &c. Lib. V.
Rule 1 pag. 226

Nominativus primæ vel secundæ perso. In verbis quorum significatio. Rule 1. in Concord Figurative p. 231

Non semper vox casualis est. Aliquando adverbium. Rule 2. in Concord Figur. 232

Verba Infiniti modi pro nomina. Resolvi potest hic modus per. Rule 2. 324

Verbum inter duos Nominativus. Observat. 7. 242

Impersonalia præcedentem. Obser. 5. 225

Nomen multitudinis sing. Rule 8. 238

Adjectivum cum Substantivo. Ad eundem modum participi. Rule 2. 228

Aliquando oratio supplet. Rule 2. 232

Relativum cum Antecedente. Rule 3. 229

Nec unica vox solum sed. Rule 2. 232

S

Re-

<i>Relativum inter duo anteceden.</i>	Observation 7	242
<i>Nunc cum posteriore</i>	ibid.	
<i>Aliquando Relativum aliquando.</i>	Observation 5.	249
<i>Quoties nullus Nominativus.</i>	Rule 1.	226
<i>At si Nominativus Relati.</i>	Rule 4.	229
<i>Quum duo Substantiv.</i>	Rule 6.	250
<i>Proinde hic Genitivus sepiissime.</i>	Observat. 2.	ib.
<i>Est etiam ubi in Dativum.</i>	Rule 1.	271
<i>Excipiuntur quæ in eodem casu.</i>	Rule 6	229
<i>Adjectivum in Neutro Genere.</i>	Rule 6	250
<i>Ponitur interdum Genitivus,</i>	Rule 5	248
<i>Laus & vituperium rei, &c.</i>	Rule 7	251
<i>Opus & usus ablativum</i>		
<i>Opus autem adjectivæ, in</i>	Observation	305
<i>Adjectiva quæ desiderium,</i>	Rule 9	244
<i>Adjectiva Verbalia in ax,</i>	Rule 10	256
<i>Nomina Partitiva aut parti, &c.</i>	Rule 8	252
<i>In alio tamen sensu</i>	ib.	
<i>In alio tamen sensu dativum,</i>	Rule 1	271
<i>Usurpantur autem cum his,</i>	Observation 4	254
<i>Interrogativum & ejus reddi. &c.</i>	Fallit	
<i>hæc regula quoties. Aut per dictionem va-</i>		
<i>riæ. Fallit denique cum per posses.</i>	314	
<i>are to be referred to. Ellipsis</i>	231	
<i>Comparativa & superlativa, &c.</i>	Rule 8.	252
<i>Comparativa autem ad duo. Comparat. ut</i>		
<i>cum exponuntur per quam,</i>	Rule 7.	308
	Adscif.	

<i>Adsciscunt & alterum ablat.</i>	Rule 8	p. 309
<i>Tanto, quanto, multo, longe.</i>	Rule 9	310
<i>Adjectiva quibus commodum:</i>	Rule 2	272
<i>Huc referuntur nomina</i>		277
<i>Quadam ex his quæ similitud.</i>	Rule 5	276
<i>Communis immunis alienus, in the</i>	Observati-	
<i>ons</i>	277 & 303	
<i>Natus commodus incommodus.</i>	Rule 2. Observat.	272
<i>Verbalia in bilis,</i>	Rule 9. 280. & Rule 2.	322
<i>Magnitudinis mensura.</i>	Rule 4	297
<i>Adjectiva quæ ad copiam.</i>	Rule 4	303
<i>Nomina diversitatis,</i>	Rule 12	312
<i>Adjectiva regunt ablativum</i>	} Rule 1.	289
<i>Forma vel modus rei</i>		
<i>Dignus indignus præditus.</i>	Rule 6	308
<i>Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri</i>	}	247
<i>Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester</i>		
<i>Nostrum, vestrum, Observation 8</i>		
<i>Hæc possessiva meus, tuus, &c.</i>	Observ. 6	250
<i>Sui & suus reciproca</i>		247
<i>Hic & ille cum ad duo</i>		248
<i>Verba Substantiva sum</i>	} Ru. I	141
<i>Denique omnia verba.</i>		
<i>Infinitivum quoque utrinque</i>		
<i>Quamvis in his postremis.</i>	Rule 6, &c.	326
<i>Sum Genitivum postulat</i>	}	250
<i>Excipiuntur hi Nominativi</i>		
<i>At hic subintelligi videtur</i>	Rule 6	
	S 2	Verba

Master Lillies Rules:

<i>Verba æstimandi Genitivo</i>	}	262
<i>Æstimo vel Genitivum vel</i>		
<i>Locci, nunci, nihili, Rule 13</i>		
<i>Verba accusandi, damnandi</i>	}	264
<i>Vertitur hic Genitivus</i>		
<i>Uterq; nullus alter neuter, Rule 14</i>		
<i>Satago misereor, miseresco,</i>	}	259
<i>At misereor & miseresco, Rule 11</i>		
<i>Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, Rule 15</i>		263
<i>Potior autem genitivo & abl. in Obser.</i>		306
<i>Omnia verba acquisitivo, Rule 1</i>		271
<i>Imprimis verba significantia, Rule 2, 3, 4</i>		272, &c.
<i>Ex his quædam efferuntur</i>	}	277
<i>Verba comparandi regunt</i>		
<i>Interdum additur ablativus</i>		
<i>Aliquando accusativum cum, Rule 6</i>		
<i>Hæc variam habent construct. Rule 1. 313, &c.</i>		283
<i>Verba promittendi ac solvend. Rule 15</i>		285
<i>Verba imperandi ac nunci. Rule 14</i>		280
<i>Verba fidendi dativum, Rule 10</i>		281
<i>Verba obsequendi & repugnan. Rule 11</i>		315 &c.
<i>At ex his quædam cum aliis</i>	}	290
<i>Verba minandi & irascendi, Rule 15</i>		
<i>Sum cum compositis præter. Rule 17</i>		
<i>Dativum postulant verba, Rule 21</i>		
<i>Pauca ex his mutant dat.</i>	}	290
<i>Est pro habeo dativum exigit</i>		
<i>Huic confine est suppetit, Rule 18</i>		
<i>Sum cum multis aliis genit. Rule 1</i>		286
<i>Est ubi hic dativus tibi, Observ.</i>		272

Verba

Master Lillies Rules.

<i>Verba transitiva cujuscunque</i>	}	295
<i>Quinetiam verba quamlibet</i>		
<i>Hunc accusativum mutant, Rule 1</i>		
<i>Sunt quæ figurata accusativum, Rule 2</i>		301
<i>Verba rogandi, vestiendi</i>	}	296
<i>Rogandi verbum interdum</i>		
<i>Vestiendi verba interdum, Rule 3</i>		
<i>Quodvis verbum admittit</i>	}	299
<i>Ablativo causa & modi, Rule 1</i>		
<i>Quibuslibet verbis subjicit</i>	}	302
<i>Vilo paulo minimo, magno</i>		
<i>Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine</i>		
<i>Sui addantur substantiva</i>		
<i>Valeo etiam interdum cum, Rule 3.</i>		
<i>Verba abundandi, implendi</i>	}	Rule 4.
<i>Ex his quædam nonnunquam,</i>		
<i>Fungor, fruor, utor, Rule 5</i>		306
<i>Prosequor te amore, Observation 5</i>		301
<i>Mereor cum adverbis, Rule 13</i>		313
<i>Quædam accipiendi, distandi</i>	}	Rule 22
<i>Vertitur hic ablativus,</i>		
<i>Verbis quæ vim comparandi, Rule 8</i>		309
<i>Quibuslibet verbis additur, Rule 11</i>		311
<i>Verbis quibusdam additur, Rule 2</i>		301
<i>Quædam tamen efferunt</i>		ib.
<i>Eidem verbo diversi casus</i>		313
<i>Passivis additur ablativus, Rule 1</i>		320
<i>Quorum participia frequentius, Rule 2</i>		322
<i>S 3.</i>		Ceteris

Master Lillies Rules.

<i>Ceteri casus manent in pos.</i>	321
<i>Vapulo, vëneo, liceo, exulo, Observation,</i>	ib.
<i>Quibusdam tum verbis tum,</i> Rule 1	323
<i>Ponuntur interdum figuratè,</i> Rule 4	325
<i>Gerundia siue gerundivæ,</i> Rule 1	327
<i>Gerundia in di pendent,</i> Rule 2	328
<i>Poeticè Infinitivus modus,</i> Observ. 1	ib.
<i>Interdum non invenuste,</i> Obser. 5	331
<i>Gerundia in do pendent ab,</i> Rule 3	330
<i>Ponuntur & absque præp.</i> Rule 4.	ib.
<i>Gerundia in dum pendent ab,</i> Rule 4	ib.
<i>Cum significatur necessitas,</i> Observ. 1	324
<i>Vertuntur Gerundii voces,</i> Obser. 5	331
<i>Præsupinum activè signif.</i> Rule 1	332
<i>Illa vero do venum do</i>	}
<i>At hoc supinum in neutro pos.</i>	
<i>Ponitur & absolutè cum,</i> Obser. 2	
<i>Posterior supinum passivè</i>	} Rule 2.
<i>In istis vero surgit cubitu,</i>	
<i>Quæ significant partem,</i> Rule 1	334
<i>Quæ autem durationem</i>	} Rule 2
<i>Dicimus etiam in paucis diebus</i>	
<i>Spacium loci in accusativo,</i> Rule 4	297
<i>Nomina appellativa & nomina,</i> Rule 1	335
<i>Omne verbum admittit gen.</i> Rule 2	ib.
<i>Hi genitivi humi, domi</i>	} Rule 5.
<i>Domi non alios secum patitur,</i>	

Verum.

Master Lillies Rules.

<i>Verum si proprium loci,</i> Rule 3	337
<i>Sic utimur ruri & rure,</i> Rule 5	338
<i>Verbis significantibus motum,</i> Rule 3	337
<i>Ad eundem modum usurpantur,</i> Rule 5	338
<i>Hæc tria impersonalia</i>	} Rule 12
<i>Adjiciuntur & illi genitivi</i>	
<i>In dativum feruntur hæc</i>	
<i>Hæc impersonalia accusandi casum</i>	}
<i>His vero attinet, pertinet,</i> Rule 16	
<i>and other Rules in Construc-</i>	
<i>tion of Personals</i>	287
<i>His impersonalibus subjicitur</i>	}
<i>Nonnulla impersonalia remigrant</i>	
<i>Cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet</i>	
<i>Verbum impersonale passivæ,</i> Obs. 1	272
<i>Participia regunt casus verborum.</i> Rule 1	322
<i>Quamvis in his usitator,</i> Rule 2	ib.
<i>Participiorum voces cum,</i> Obser. 2	247
<i>Exosus, perosus, pertesus,</i>	}
<i>Exosus & perosus etiam</i> Observation 2.	
<i>Natus, prognatus, satus,</i> Rule 5	
<i>En & ecce demonstrandi</i>	} Rule 2
<i>En & ecce exprobandis</i>	
<i>Quædam adverbialia loci,</i> Rule 17	243
<i>Instar equiparationem</i>	270
<i>Hic apponitur interdum</i>	} Rule 4
<i>Quædam dativum admittunt,</i> Rule 8	
<i>Sunt & hi dativi adverbialia,</i> Rule 1	243
<i>Sunt quæ accusandi casum,</i> Rule 8	278
<i>Cedo flagitantis exhiberi</i>	}
<i>Adverbialia diversitatis</i>	

S. 4.

Adver-

Master Lillies Rules.

Adverbia comparativi &
Plus nominativo, genitivo, accusa-
tivo & ablativo junctum reperi-
tur, Rule 7

Ubi postquam & cum
Donec & quamdiu
Pro quousque nunc Indic.
Dum de presenti non
Dum pro dummodo alias
Dum pro donec subjunctivo
Quoad pro quamdiu vel
Simulac, simulatque Indic.
Quemadmodum ut utcumque
Ut pro postquam Indic.
Quasi seu tanquam perinde
Alias copulant confimiles
Nè prohibendi Imperativis
Nè pro non ceteris modis
Adverbia accedente casu. All these
are in the construction of
Conjunctions and Adverbs.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ
Excepto si casualis dictionis
Conjunctiones Copulativæ

308

342, &c.

ibid.

Aliquo.

Master Lillies Rules.

Aliquoties autem similes
Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi
Ni nisi siquidem quod
Si utrique modo jungitur
Si quis tantum Indicativo
Quando quandoquidem
Quippe cum proprium
Qui cum habet vim
Cum pro quamvis
Cum & tum item tum
Nè an num interrogandi
Ut casualis seu perfectiva
Ut concedentis seu positum
Ut & post quam pro

Prepositio subauditur
Prepositio in compositione
Verba composita cum

In pro corum erga & ad
In cum accusativo jungitur
In cum significatur actus
Sub pro ad per & ante
Super pro ultra accusativo
Super pro de & in ablat.
Subter uno significatu
Tenus gaudet ablativo
Prepositiones cum casum

343, &c.

Rule 1
&c. 340

133, 134

Inter-

394

Master Lillies Rules.

Interjectiones non raro

O exclamantis nominat.

Heu & pro nominativo



243

Hei & ve dativo apponitur, Rule 22

294

FINIS.
